# MUTOH

# OPERATION MANUAL

# **MUTOH Status Monitor**

Read This Manual Before Using The Application

# Contents

Conte	nts	1
1. Inti	roduction	
1.1.	Summary	1-1
1.2.	Environment	
1.3.	Trademarks Mentioned in this Manual	1-2
1.4.	Supported Application Version	1-3
1.5.	Supported Language	1-3
2. Ins	stall / Uninstall	2-1
2.1.	Installation	2-1
2.2.	Uninstallation	2-4
2.3.	Setting Exceptions in Windows Firewall Settings	2-4
3. Init	tial Setting	
3.1.	Introduction	
3.2.	Service List	3-3
3.3.	Proxy Setting	3-4
3.3.1	Proxy Setting Manually	3-5
3.4.	MUTOH Club Login	
3.4.1	MUTOH Club Login Error	3-7
3.5.	MUTOH Club Login Setting	3-8
3.6.	Report Mail Setting	3-9
3.6.1	Mail Setting(General)	3-10
3.6.2	Mail Setting(SMTP)	3-11
3.7.	e-mail address Setting	
3.8.	Default Setting Confirmation	3-13
3.9.	Printer Registration	3-14
3.9.1	Register the printer information	3-15
3.9.2	Completion	3-19
3.9.3	Registering several printers	3-21
3.9.4	Change registered printer information	3-22
3.10.	Initial setting completed	
4. Sta	art/Exit	4-1
4.1.	Start	4-1

4.2.	Task Tray Icon	4-1
4.3.	Title bar	
5. MS	SM Setting	5-1
5.1.	Setting	5-1
5.2.	Help	5-2
5.2.1	Initialization	5-3
5.2.2	Version	5-4
6. Me	enu	6-1
6.1.	User Setting Information	6-2
6.2.	Menu	6-3
6.2.1	Date and Time Update	6-4
6.2.2	Media Type Edit	6-5
6.2.3	Firmware Update	6-6
6.2.4	Check the Latest Firmware	6-13
6.2.5	Printer Information Backup	6-23
6.2.6	Printer Information Upload	6-23
6.2.7	Exit (MSM Minimize)	6-23
7. Sta	atus monitor	7-1
7.1.	Printer Information	7-2
7.1.1	Display the Details Information	7-3
7.2.	Detail Information	7-4
7.3.	Status Information	7-5
7.4.	Smart/C Information	7-6
7.4.1	Update the Smart/C with MB-Web	7-7
7.4.2	Update the Smart/C with the Update File (MSCF)	7-8
7.4.3	Update the Smart/C with S/C Card	7-9
7.4.4	Smart/C Information	7-10
7.5.	Heater Information	7-12
7.5.1	Heater Information	7-12
7.5.2	Blower Heater Information	7-13
7.6.	Head/Cartridge Information	7-14
7.7.	S/C Card Information	7-15
7.7.1	Format check	7-16
7.7.2	S/C Card Recovery	7-17
7.8.	Media Information	7-18
7.9.	Print Information	7-19

8. Ac	tivation	8-1
8.1.	Execute Activation via the Internet	
8.2.	Execute Activation By Entering "Activation Code"	
9. Re	port Mail	
9.1.	Printer Setup	9-2
9.2.	Sending Mail Address Setting	9-3
9.3.	Sending Mail Function Setting	
9.3.1	Send Mail Function	9-5
9.4.	Mail Content Setting	
9.4.1	Threshold Valuet	9-7
9.5.	List of Settings	
10.Co	lorVerify	10-1
10.1.	History	10-2
10.1.	1 Printer Infomation	
10.1.	2 History List	
10.1.	3 Detail Information	
10.2.	Color Verify	10-11
10.2.	1 Configuration	
10.2.	2 Preparing the printer	
10.2.	3 Printing configuration information	
10.2.	4 Waiting for measurement data to be received	
10.2.	5 Printing color target	
10.2.	6 Waiting for the instrument to be attached	
10.2.	7 Waiting for the measurements to complete	
10.2.	8 Measuring	
10.2.	9 Receiving the instrument to be detached	
10.2.	10 Waiting for the instrument to be detached	
10.2.	11 Printing color verify result	
10.2.	12 Waiting for color verify result	
10.2.	13 End	
10.2.	14 Stop	
10.2.	15 Windows Firewall	
11. VS	M Mobile	11-1
11.1.	VSM Mobile Setting	11-2
11.1.	1 VSM Mobile Information	
11.1.	2 MSM Setting	

12. Print	History	12-1
12.1.	Search Condition	12-2
12.2.	Print History List	12-3
12.3.	Detail Information	12-4
12.3.1	Print Information	12-5
12.3.2	Graph	12-6
12.4.	Statistics Information	12-7
12.4.1	Statistics Information	12-8
12.4.2	Graph	12-9
12.5.	Setting	12-10
12.6.	Cost Setting	12-11
12.6.1	Ink	12-12
12.6.2	Media	12-13
12.6.3	Other	12-14
12.7.	Initialization	12-15
12.8.	Export	12-16
12.8.1	Manual	12-17
40.0.0	Auto	40.47
12.8.2	Auto	
-	ote Panel	
-		13-1
13.Rem	ote Panel	13-1 13-1
13.Rem 13.1.	ote Panel VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P	<b>13-1</b> 13-1 
13.Rem 13.1. 13.1.1	ote Panel VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P Remote Panel	13-1 13-1 
13. Rem 13.1. 13.1.1 13.1.2	ote Panel VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P Remote Panel Printer Status	13-1 13-1 
<b>13. Rem</b> 13.1. 13.1.1 13.1.2 13.1.3	VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P Remote Panel Printer Status Printer Control	13-1 13-1 13-1 
<b>13. Rem</b> 13.1. 13.1.1 13.1.2 13.1.3 13.1.4	VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P Remote Panel Printer Status Printer Control Media Setting	13-1 13-1 13-2 13-7 13-59 13-125
<b>13. Rem</b> 13.1. 13.1.1 13.1.2 13.1.3 13.1.4 13.1.5	Note Panel VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P Remote Panel Printer Status Printer Control. Media Setting Contour Cutting Settings	13-1 13-1 13-2 13-7 13-59 13-125 13-128
<b>13. Rem</b> 13.1. 13.1.1 13.1.2 13.1.3 13.1.4 13.1.5 13.1.6	Note Panel	13-1 13-1 13-1 13-2 13-7 13-59 13-125 13-128 13-133
<b>13. Rem</b> 13.1. 13.1.1 13.1.2 13.1.3 13.1.4 13.1.5 13.1.6 13.1.7	Note Panel         VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P         Remote Panel         Printer Status         Printer Control         Media Setting         Contour Cutting Settings         Advanced Setting         Other Settings	13-1 13-1 13-1 13-2 13-7 13-59 13-125 13-128 13-133
13. Rem 13.1. 13.1.1 13.1.2 13.1.3 13.1.4 13.1.5 13.1.6 13.1.7 13.1.8 13.2.	Note Panel VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P Remote Panel Printer Status Printer Control Media Setting Contour Cutting Settings Advanced Setting Other Settings Plug Lifetime	13-1 13-1 13-1 13-2 13-59 13-125 13-128 13-133 13-139
13. Rem 13.1. 13.1.1 13.1.2 13.1.3 13.1.4 13.1.5 13.1.6 13.1.7 13.1.8 13.2.	VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P Remote Panel Printer Status Printer Control Media Setting Contour Cutting Settings Advanced Setting Other Settings Plug Lifetime VJ-1x38(W)X/1x24(W)X/1628X/2638X/1938TX/1638UH(2)/	13-1 13-1 13-1 13-2 13-7 13-59 13-125 13-128 13-133 13-139 13-141
13. Rem 13. 1. 13. 1.1 13. 1.2 13. 1.3 13. 1.4 13. 1.5 13. 1.6 13. 1.7 13. 1.8 13. 2. 1948 W.	Note Panel           VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P           Remote Panel           Printer Status           Printer Status           Printer Control           Media Setting           Contour Cutting Settings           Advanced Setting           Other Settings           Plug Lifetime           VJ-1x38(W)X/1x24(W)X/1628X/2638X/1938TX/1638UH(2)/           X/1324XS/1638UR(2)/162xMH	13-1 13-1 13-1 13-2 13-7 13-59 13-125 13-128 13-133 13-139 13-141
13. Rem 13.1. 13.1.1 13.1.2 13.1.3 13.1.4 13.1.5 13.1.6 13.1.7 13.1.8 13.2. 1948W/ 13.2.1	Note Panel VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P Remote Panel Printer Status Printer Control Media Setting Contour Cutting Settings Advanced Setting Other Settings Plug Lifetime VJ-1x38(W)X/1x24(W)X/1628X/2638X/1938TX/1638UH(2)/ X/1324XS/1638UR(2)/162xMH Remote Panel	13-1 13-1 13-1 13-2 13-7 13-59 13-125 13-128 13-133 13-139 13-141 13-141
13. Rem 13.1. 13.1.1 13.1.2 13.1.3 13.1.4 13.1.5 13.1.6 13.1.7 13.1.8 13.2. 1948W 13.2.1 13.2.2	Note Panel           VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P           Remote Panel           Printer Status           Printer Status           Printer Control           Media Setting           Contour Cutting Settings           Advanced Setting           Other Settings           Plug Lifetime           VJ-1x38(W)X/1x24(W)X/1628X/2638X/1938TX/1638UH(2)/           X/1324XS/1638UR(2)/162xMH           Remote Panel           Printer Status	13-1 13-1 13-1 13-2 13-59 13-125 13-128 13-133 13-139 13-141 13-141 13-142 13-142
13. Rem 13. 1. 13. 1.1 13. 1.2 13. 1.3 13. 1.4 13. 1.5 13. 1.6 13. 1.7 13. 1.8 13. 2. 1948 W 13. 2.1 13. 2.2 13. 2.3	Note Panel           VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P           Remote Panel           Printer Status           Printer Status           Printer Control           Media Setting           Contour Cutting Settings           Advanced Setting           Other Settings           Plug Lifetime           VJ-1x38(W)X/1x24(W)X/1628X/2638X/1938TX/1638UH(2)/           X/1324XS/1638UR(2)/162xMH           Remote Panel           Printer Status           Settings	13-1 13-1 13-2 13-2 13-7 13-59 13-125 13-128 13-133 13-139 13-141 13-141 13-143 13-144

13.3.2	Printer Status	13-151
13.3.3	Printer Control	13-152
13.3.4	Media Setting	13-162
13.3.5	Advanced Setting	13-175
13.3.6	Plug Lifetime	13-182
13.4.	XPJ-1641SR/1682SR/16x2WR/1341xR-P/1641SR-P/	
1682SF	R-P/1638UR/HA-1642	13-184
13.4.1	Remote Panel	13-184
13.4.2	Printer Status	13-185
13.4.3	Printer Control	13-188
13.4.4	Media Setting	
13.4.5	Advanced Setting	13-216
13.4.6	Other Setting	13-221
14. MUT	OH Print Server	
14.1.	Notes for Use	14-1
14.1.1	Preparation	14-1
14.1.2	Software RIP Setup	14-2
14.1.3	Windows Firewall Exception Setting	14-3
14.1.4	Notes	14-8
14.2.	Hardware Requirements	14-9
14.2.1	Recommended Hardware Requirements	14-9
14.2.2	Example of Network Configuration to use MPS	14-11
14.3.	How to Use MPS	14-13
14.3.1	Enable MPS	14-13
14.3.2	Start MPS	14-13
14.3.3	MPS Settings Confirmation Dialog	14-14
14.3.4	Select MPS Service Number	14-14
14.3.5	MPSSettings	14-15
14.3.6	MPS Main Screen	14-15
14.4.	How to Configure MPS Settings	14-16
14.4.1	MPS Service Number	14-16
14.4.2	MPS Setting	14-18
14.4.3	Main Screen	14-19
14.4.4	MPS Informaition	14-20
14.4.5	Restart MPS	14-21
14.5.	Restrictions	14-22

14.5.1	When RIP and Spectrophotometer (SPECTROVUE) are used in combination	14-22
14.6.	Troubleshooting	14-22
14.6.1	Troubles for Installation	14-23
14.6.2	Troubles related to Printing	14-25
15. Mini	iMSM	15-1
15.1.	How to start	15-1
15.2.	Main Screen(For models other than XPJ-1462UF)	15-2
15.2.1	Status Information	15-3
15.2.2	S/C Information	15-3
15.2.3	Smart/C Information	15-4
15.2.4	Heater Information	15-4
15.2.5	Remote Panel	15-5
15.2.6	Printer Information	15-6
15.2.7	MiniMSM Settings	15-6
15.3.	XPJ-1462UF	15-7
15.3.1	Setting screen (Cleaning)	15-8
15.3.2	Setting screen (Nozzle Check)	15-9
16. Vert	eLith	16-1
17.List	of Supported Functions for Each Machine Model	17-1
18. Erro	or Code List	18-1
18.1.	Printer Status	18-1
18.2.	Printer Registration	18-6
18.3.	Remote Panel	18-10
18.4.	Smart/C	18-11
18.4.1	S/C Card	
19. Erro	or messages and solutions	19-1

# 1. Introduction

This document describes the operating instruction of MUTOH Status Monitor (hereinafter referred to as MSM).

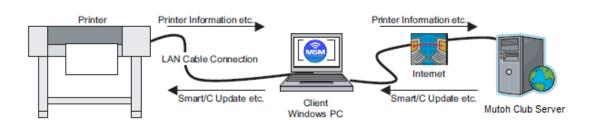
## 1.1. Summary

The MSM supports the following functions.

- 1. Date and Time Update
- 2. Edit the name of user media
- 3. Update firmware
- 4. Check current firmware
- 5. Update the Smart/C
- 6. Status Monitor
- 7. Activation
- 8. Report Mail
- 9. Color Verify
- 10. VSM Mobile

NOTE

- The supported functions of MSM vary depending on the model.
- The latest information for MSM is posted on MUTOH Club. Please login regularly to check the update.
- Please note that some descriptions in this document may be the descriptions for previous VSM (ValueJet Status Monitor).



#### **1.2. Environment**

To use the MSM, the following minimum requirements must be met.

#### • Windows PC

1. Windows 10 or Windows 11.  $^{*1}$ 

When the above OS support ends, the operation on MSM cannot be ensured.

- 2. Log on as an administrator.
- 3. Can connect to the printer via LAN port (RJ-45).
- 4. Screen resolution of 1024x768 or higher (recommended).
- 5. Install the latest Internet Explorer and connect to the Internet \*2.

#### • LAN cable \*3

#### <sup>\*1</sup>: 32bit(x86)OS

- <sup>\*2</sup>: The MSM operation is not guaranteed without Microsft Edge (recommended browser).
- <sup>\*3</sup>: The preferred method of network connection for the printer should be via hub (Straight Cable).

#### NOTE

• The latest information for MSM is posted on MUTOH Club. Please login regularly to check the update.

### 1.3. Trademarks Mentioned in this Manual

- Windows 10, Windows 11 and Microsft Edge are registered trademarks or product names of Microsoft Corporation.
- Android market is a trademark or registered trademark of Google Inc.
- Other company and product names may be registered trademarks or product names.

# **1.4. Supported Application Version**

Application	Version
Application Version	9.01
MUTOH Print Server(MPS) Version	1.6.0
MUTOH LFP Finder Version	2.4.0

# 1.5. Supported Language

Language			
Japanese	German		
English	Spanish		
Korean	Dutch		
Chinese	Italian		
French	Portuguese		

# 2. Install / Uninstall

## 2.1. Installation

Use the installer to install MSM. If MSM is already installed, this installation procedure is not required.

1. Execute the "¥ENG¥Setup.exe" file in the distributed folder, which is for English.

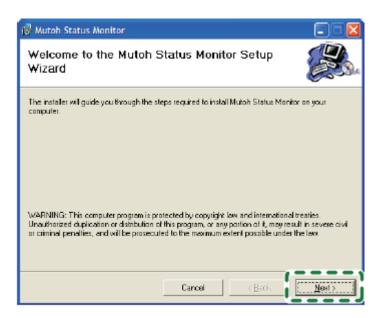
The install wizard starts up. Follow the procedure below to install the MSM.

 If the essential component for MSM "VC++ Run-time Library" is not installed, you will need to install the component.

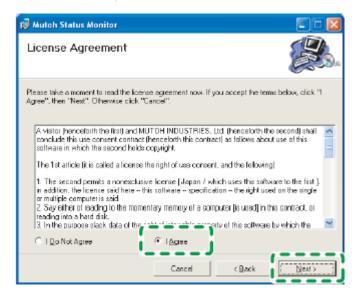
Click the "Install" button to complete the installation.

🐻 Mutoh Status Monitor Setup
The following components will be installed on your machine:
Visual C++ Fluntime Libraries (x86)
Do you wish to install these components?
If you choose Cancel, setup will exit.
Install Cancel

3. Click "Next" button.



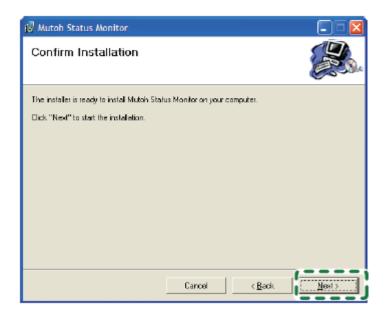
4. To accept the terms below, click "I Agree", then "Next".



5. Select the folder to install the MSM. Please proceed to the installation with the default folder or a folder you created. In addition, select the installation user.

🕼 Mutoh Status Monitor	
Select Installation Folder	
The installer will instal Mutch Status Monitor to the following folder. To install in this folder, click "Next". To install to a different folder, enter if be	low or click "Browce".
Eolden ChProgram FileshMutchhMutch Status Monitorh	В <u>т</u> онкеа <u>D</u> iek Coet
Instal Mutch Status Monitor for yourself, or for anyone who uses this comp C Everyone C Just <u>ma</u> Cancel < <u>B</u> ack	outer:

6. To continue the installation, click "Next" button.



7. The installation is complete. Click "Close" button.

😥 Mutoh Status Monitor			
Installation Complete			
Mutch Status Monitor has been success	stuly installed.		
⊡ick "Close" to exit			
			/>
	Cancel	< <u>B</u> ack	<u></u>

### 2.2. Uninstallation

Select the "Mutoh Status Monitor" from the "Add or Remove Programs", and click "Remove" button.



NOTE

• The MSM can be uninstalled by executing the "Setup.exe". In that case, select the "Remove MUTOH Status Monitor" to execute the uninstallation.

### 2.3. Setting Exceptions in Windows Firewall Settings

If you use Windows Vista or later as the OS, you need to add MSM to the exceptions list for Windows Firewall.



- \*This procedure is for Windows Vista.
- If you use virus security software other than Windows Firewall, you may need to make the settings changes to the software. Contact the software vendor for the setting procedure.

Follow the procedure below.

- Click the Start button and then click [Control Panel].
   \*The Control Panel window will be displayed.
- 2. Click "Allow a program through Windows Firewall".

Control Panel	•			Search	\$
Control Pasel Home Classic View	9	System and Maintenance Git stated with Windows Back up year computer	82	User Accounts	ecounts
	۲	Security Checkfor updates	**	Appearance and Personalization Change desktop backer Change the color scher Adjust screen resolution	ne .
	Q.	Network and Internet View network status and tasks Set upfile sharing	6	Clock, Language, a Change keyboards or et methods	
	-	Handware and Sound Play CDs or other media automatically Printer Mouse	C	Ease of Access Let Windows suggest ve Optimize visual display	ttings
	Ø.	Programs Usinstall a program Change statup program.	*	Additional Option	5
Recent Tasks					
Windows Frewall					

3. When the Windows Firewall Settings window is displayed, select the Exceptions tab and click the Add program button.

Windows Firewall Settings	
General Exceptions Advanced	
Exceptions control how programs communicate through Windows firew program or port exception to allow communications through the firewa	
Windows Firewall is currently using settings for the private network loc What are the risks of unblocking a program3	ation.
To enable an exception, select its checkbox: Program or port	4
	н
Add program Add pgrt Properties 🛛 🖓	lete
Notify me when Windows Firewall blocks a new program	
OK Cancel	Δρρίγ

- Add a Program
  Select the program you want to add, or dick browse to find one that is not
  listed, and then dick DK.
  Pograms:

  Pograms:

  Pgth:

  Pgth:

  Pgth:

  Cancel

  CK
  Cancel
- 4. When the Add a Program window is displayed, click the Browse button.

5. When the Browse window is displayed, select MSM.exe where the MSM is installed and click the Open button.

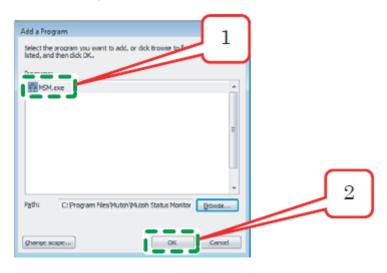


Program Files>Mutoh>Mutoh Status Monitor

Ovence • III Ven	🗹 New Kolser		1	0	
Invente Loks Desktop Recent Places Computer Documents Pictures Music Recently Chenged	Name Contg	Date modified 3/16/2010 9-34 AM 3/10/2010 6-31 PM	File Folder File Folder Application	Site	
Public Foldes					2

6. Make sure that MSM.exe is added and click the OK button.

\*The Windows Firewall Settings window will be displayed.



Confirm that MSM.exe is added in the Windows Firewall Settings window and click the OK button.
 \*Finish the setting.

Windows Firewall Settings		
General Exceptions Advanced		
Exceptions control how programs communicate through Windows Fir program or port exception to allow communications through to	ewall. Add a	
Windows Firewall is currently using settings for the private ne	1	
What are the risks of unblocking a program?	1	
To enable an exception, select its check boxe	_	
Program or cort	- n	
	-	
Add program Add port Properties	Selete	
Notify me when Windows Frewal blocks a new program		~
OK Cancel	OPPly	

# 3. Initial Setting

Perform the initial setting for the MSM.

"Default setting Wizard" dialogue will be displayed when the MSM is started for the first time.

	Default setting Wizard
1. < Introduction >	Introduction
2. < Service List > 3. < Proxy Setting > Automatic Manual	Thank you for installing MSM To use the application easily, please follow the procedure to configure each setting. Various services will be available by connecting MSM to MUTOH Club.
4. < MUTOH Club Login > ▼ 5.< MUTOH Club Login Setting >	
1 Single Vultiple 6. < Report Mail Setting > Easy Manual	Check current firmware Report Mail Printer Info. Providing Service
<ul> <li>7.&lt; e-mail address Setting &gt;</li> <li>8.&lt; Default Setting Confirmation &gt;</li> <li>9. &lt; Printer Registration &gt;</li> </ul>	Default setting will be started
10. < End >	< Back Cancel

No.	Name	Description
1	Menu	Setting contents to be specified in the initial settingFollow the procedure to configure the setting.

NOTE

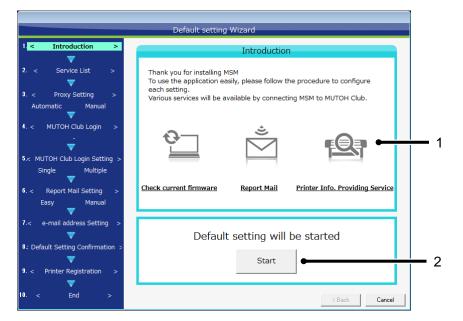
• The initial setting cannot be canceled on the way.

Please complete the setting.

#### 3.1. Introduction

This window will be displayed at the first time to use MSM.

Check the contents, and click "Start" button.



No.	Name	Description
1	Service List	List of services to be available for users by connecting the MSM to MUTOH Club.
2	Start	Start the initial setting.

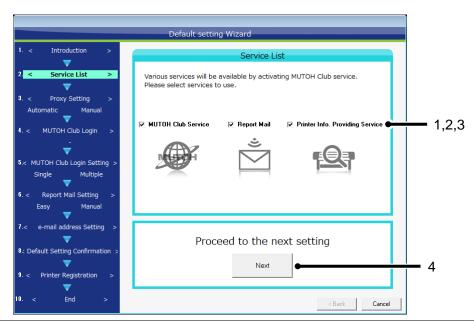
## 3.2. Service List

Specify the contents of MUTOH Club service to use.

Select the service to use, and click "Next" button.



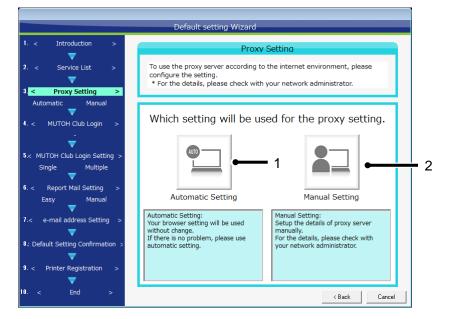
• To use MUTOH Club service, need to log into MUTOH Club through the Internet.



No.	Name	Description
1	MUTOH Club Service	Select the checkbox to use MUTOH Club service.When the MUTOH Club service is unchecked, the following services will not be available.
2	Report Mail	Select the checkbox to use the service to send report mail to the e-mail address specified in MSM.
3	Printer Information Providing Service	Select the checkbox to use the service to back up the printer information to MUTOH Club from MSM, and check the printer information through MUTOH Club.
4	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

#### 3.3. Proxy Setting

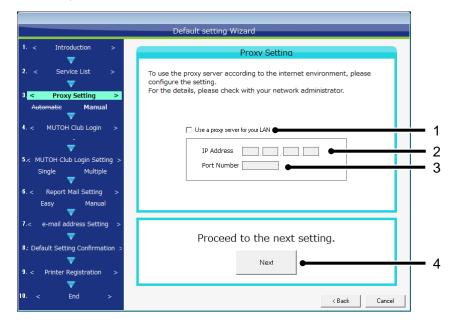
To use the proxy server according to the internet environment, please configure the setting.



No.	Name	Description
1	Automatic Setting	Your browser setting will be used without change. If there is no problem, please use automatic setting.
2	Manual Setting	Setup the details of proxy server manually. For the details, please check with your network administrator.

#### 3.3.1 Proxy Setting Manually

Configure the proxy setting manually.



No.	Name	Description
1	Use a proxy server for your LAN	Check the box to use the proxy server, and enter the IP address and port number.
2	IP Address	Enter the IP address of proxy server.
3	Port Number	Enter the port number of proxy server.
4	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

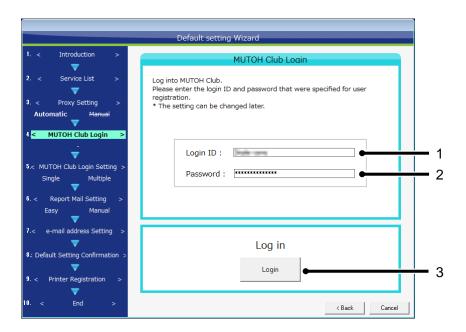
# 3.4. MUTOH Club Login

Log into MUTOH Club.

Please enter the login ID and password that were specified for user registration.



• To use MUTOH Club service, need to log into MUTOH Club through the Internet.



No.	Name	Description
1	Login ID	Enter the login ID for MUTOH Club.
2	Password	Enter the password for MUTOH Club.
3	Login	Enter the login ID and password to log into MUTOH Club.

#### 3.4.1 MUTOH Club Login Error

If a wrong login ID or password is entered, or have trouble to connect the Internet, a login error will occur.Check the login ID, password and the Internet connection to log into MUTOH Club again.

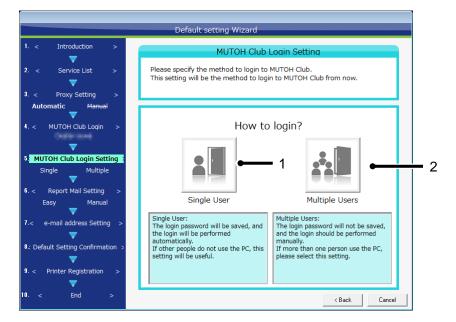
	Default setting Wizard	
1. < Introduction >	MUTOH Club Login Error	
2. < Service List > 3. < Proxy Setting > Automatic Manual	Failed to login to MUTOH Club. Please check the login ID, password and the internet connection. Enter the necessary items to login again.	
Image: Section 2     Image: Section 2       Since 2     Multiple       Single 3     Multiple	Login ID : Password : *******	
7.< e-mail address Setting > 8: Default Setting Confirmation > 9. < Printer Registration >	Log in Login	
10. < End >	< Back Cancel	

No.	Name	Description
1	Login ID	Enter the login ID for MUTOH Club.
2	Password	Enter the password for MUTOH Club.
3	Login	Enter the login ID and password to log into MUTOH Club.

# 3.5. MUTOH Club Login Setting

Please specify the method to login to MUTOH Club.

This setting will be the method to login to MUTOH Club from now.

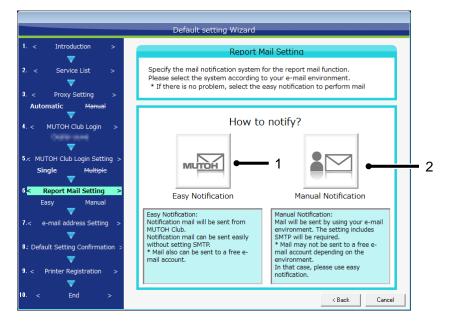


No.	Name	Description
1	Single User	The login password will be saved, and the login will be performed automatically. If other people do not use the PC, this setting will be useful.
2	Multiple Users	The login password will not be saved, and the login should be performed manually. If more than one person use the PC, please select this setting.

#### 3.6. Report Mail Setting

Specify the mail notification system for the report mail function.

Please select the system according to your e-mail environment.

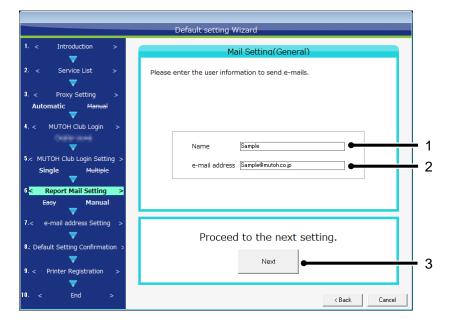


NOTE

• For the report mail functions, refer to "9.Report Mail".

#### 3.6.1 Mail Setting(General)

If the report mail is set to manual notification, enter the user information to send mails.

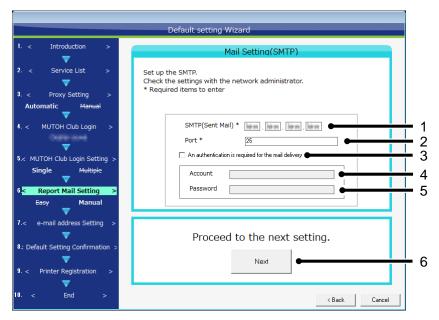


No.	Name	Description
1	Name	Enter the name to corresponding to the mail address for sending.It will be displayed by the mail software for receiving.
2	e-mail address	Enter the mail address for sending.
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

#### 3.6.2 Mail Setting(SMTP)

Set up the SMTP.

NOTE



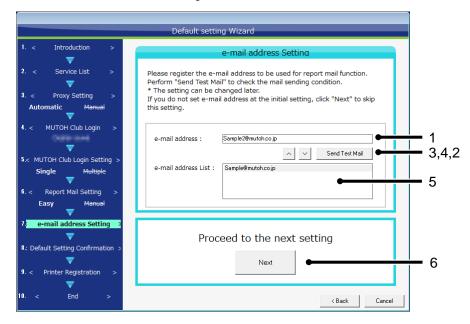
No.	Name	Description
1	Name	Enter the IP address of the mail server for sending.
2	Port	Enter the port number to be used for the connection with SMTP server.Usually, please set the default value "25" port. * Please change the setting according to the SMTP server in use.
3	An authentication is required for the mail delivery	Check the box when the authentication for SMTP server is necessary. Then enter the 4. account and 5. password.
4	Account	Enter the authentication account for the SMTP server.
5	Password	Enter the authentication password for the SMTP server.
6	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

# • For the setting contents, please check with your network administrator.

#### 3.7. e-mail address Setting

Please register the e-mail address to be used for report mail function.

Perform "Send Test Mail" to check the mail sending condition.



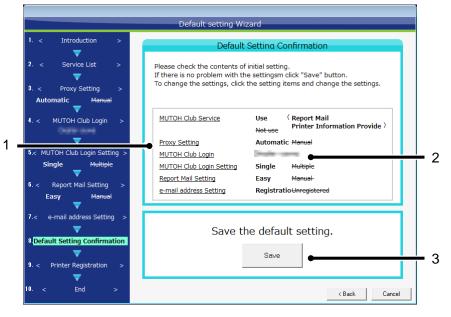
No.	Name	Description
1	e-mail address	Enter the mail address for receiving to be added.
2	Send Test Mail	Send a test mail to the address entered in "1. E-mail Address (added). * This will not be valid until other settings complete.
3	Delete Mail Address	To delete the registered e-mail address for receiving, select and click the mail address to delete.
4	Add Mail Address	Register the mail address for receiving entered in "1. E-mail Address".
5	Registered Mail Address	The registered mail address for receiving will be displayed.
6	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

# 3.8. Default Setting Confirmation

Please check the contents of initial setting.

If there is no problem with the settingsm click "Save" button.

To change the settings, click the setting items and change the settings.



No.	Name	Description
1	Setting Items	List of initial setting itemsTo change the setting, click the item and change the content.
2	Setting Contents	The contents of each setting will be displayed.Check the setting contents.
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

# 3.9. Printer Registration

Register the printer to be managed by MSM.

	Default setting Wizard
1. < Introduction >	Printer Registration
<ol> <li>Service List &gt;</li> <li>Proxy Setting &gt; Automatic Manual</li> <li>&lt; MUTOH Club Login &gt;</li> <li>&lt; MUTOH Club Login Setting &gt; Single Multiple</li> <li>&lt; Report Mall Setting &gt; Easy Manual</li> </ol>	The initial settings are saved. To register the printer continuously, click "Register" button. * To register the printer, the printer should be connected to the network.
7.     e-mail address Setting       8: Default Setting Confirmation       9       Printer Registration	Register the printer?
10. < End >	< Back Cancel

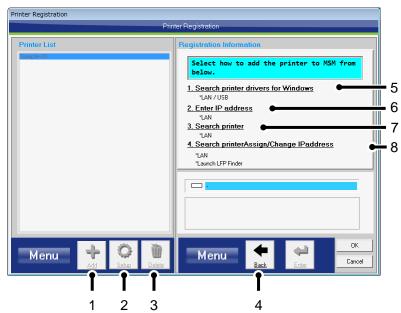
No.	Name	Description
1	Add	Register the printer on MSM.
2	Skip	The printer registration in the initial setting will be skipped.

NOTE

• To register the printer, you need to obtain the printer information through bidirectional communication with printer. Turn on the printer to set the network connection.

#### 3.9.1 Register the printer information

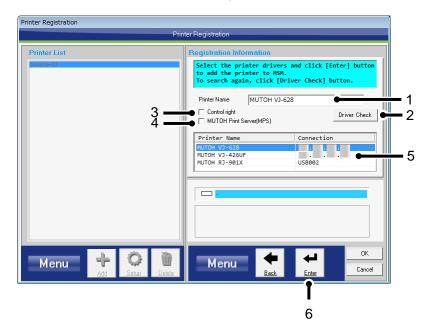
Click "Add" button and select the printer registration method from the Registration Information pane.



No.	Name	Description
1	Menu(Add)	Press "Add" button to register a printer.
2	Menu(Setup)	Press "Setup" button to change the registered printer information. Refer to "3.9.4" for details.
3	Menu(Delete)	Delete the registered printer.
4	Menu(Back)	Return to the printer list menu.
5	Search printer drivers for Windows	Use this option to register a printer from the Windows printer driver list being installed. Refer to "3.9.1.1Search printer drivers for Windows" for details.
6	Enter IP address	Use this option to register a printer by entering the printer IP address. Refer to "3.9.1.2Enter IP address" for details.
7	Search printer	Use this option to search a printer from the same network segment and register it to MSM. Refer to "3.9.1.3" for details. *need to be connected by LAN.
8	Search printer Assign/Change IP address	Launch LFP-Finder. Use this option to search a printer and change the printer IP address setting. *need to be connected by LAN.

#### 3.9.1.1. Search printer drivers for Windows

Register a printer from the Windows printer driver list being installed.

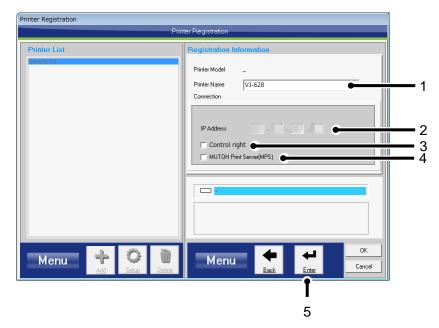


No.	Name	Description
1	Printer Name	Enter the registration name that you selected. To use several printers, please change the printer name.
2	Driver Check	Check the installed printer driver.
3	Control right	<ul> <li>Specify the "Control Right" for the printer to be registered.</li> <li>Check the box to provide the MSM with a control right.</li> <li>Users who have control right selected can update the Smart/C.</li> <li>* If other MSM has control rights, the control right will not be available.</li> <li>* When the printer receives no communication from a user who obtains the control right for 3 minutes, the control right will be opened, and the printer gives other users a permission to obtain the control right.</li> </ul>
4	MUTOH Print Server(MPS)	Check the box to enable MPS for the printer to be registered. MPS may not be available depending on the model.
5	Driver List	Display the list of printer driver compatible with MSM. Select the printer driver to register.
6	Menu(Enter)	Register the printer.

NOTE

• For USB connection, the printer driver installed with USB is required.

#### 3.9.1.2. Enter IP address



No.	Name	Description
1	Printer Name	Enter the registration name that you selected. To use several printers, please change the printer name.
2	IP Address	Enter the IP address of the printer to be registered.
3	Control right	Specify the "Control Right" for the printer to be registered. Check the box to provide the MSM with a control right. Users who have control right selected can update the Smart/C. * If other MSM has control rights, the control right will not be available. * When the printer receives no communication from a user who obtains the control right for 3 minutes, the control right will be opened, and the printer gives other users a permission to obtain the control right.
4	MUTOH Print Server(MPS)	Check the box to enable MPS for the printer to be registered. MPS may not be available depending on the model.
5	Menu(Enter)	Register the printer.

#### 3.9.1.3. Search printer

Search a printer from the same network segment and register it to MSM.

Printer Registration Printer List Sample-01 1 Printer Name VJ-426UF 2 34 Control right MUTOH Print Server(MPS) Search Printer Serial No. IP Address Printer M... IK7U VJ-1948WX . . . 5 οк الين) Q Menu Menu Cancel I

	6	
No.	Name	Description
1	Printer Name	Enter the registration name that you selected. To use several printers, please change the printer name.
2	Search Printer	Search a printer from the same network segment.
3	Control right	Check the box to provide the MSM with a control right for the printer to be registered. Users who have control right can update the Smart/C. * If other MSM has control rights, the control right will not be available. * When the printer receives no communication from a user who obtains the control right for 3 minutes, the control right will be opened, and the printer gives other users a permission to obtain the control right.
4	MUTOH Print Server(MPS)	Check the box to enable MPS for the printer to be registered. MPS may not be available depending on the model.
5	List of Printer *1	Display the printers in the same network segment.
6	Menu(Enter)	Register the printer.

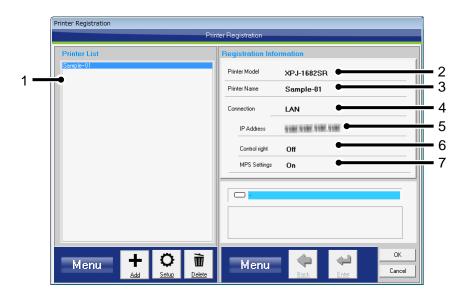
NOTE

\*1 Printers connected to other network segment are not displayed in the list. To register a printer on other network segment, see 3.9.1.2.

#### 3.9.2 Completion

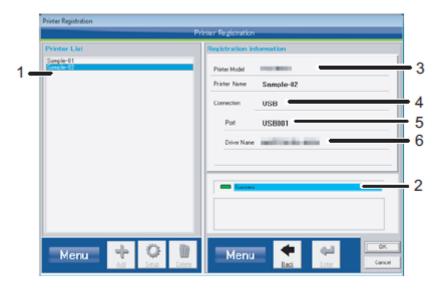
When the status display shows "Success", the printer registration has completed successfully, and the printer will be added to the "Printer List".

#### 1. For LAN connection



No.	Name	Description
1	Printer List	The registration name of the registered printer will be displayed.
2	Status Display	The status of printer registration will be displayed. When "Success" is displayed, the printer registration completed successfully.
3	Printer Model	The model name of the registered printer will be displayed.
4	Connection	Display the connection method with printer.
5	IP Address	Display the IP address of registered printer.
6	Control right	Display the control right for registered printer.
7	MPS Settings	Display the MPS settings for the registered printer.

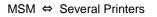
#### 2. For USB connection

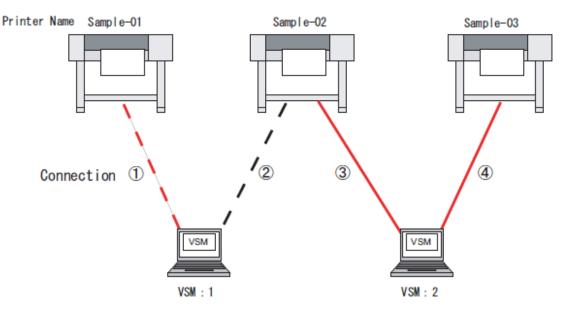


No.	Name	Description
1	Printer List	The registration name of the registered printer will be displayed.
2	Status Display	The status of printer registration will be displayed. When "Success" is displayed, the printer registration completed successfully.
3	Printer Model	The model name of the registered printer will be displayed.
4	Connection	Display the connection method with printer.
5	Port	Display the port name of registered printer.
6	Driver Name	Display the driver name of registered printer.

## 3.9.3 Registering several printers

If you have multiple printers, you can register all printers to the MSM. To register the multiple printers, repeat procedures "3.9.1 Register the printer information" for each unit. The icon for connection between MSM and multiple printers:

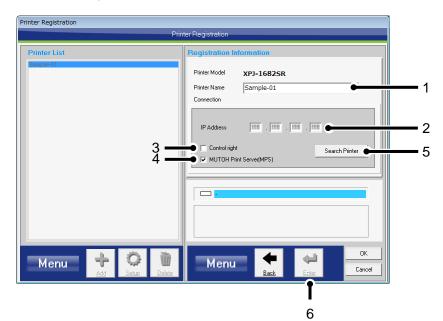




Printer Name	Connection	Control right	Smart/CUpdate
Sample-01	1	Available	Enabled
Sample-02	2	Unavailable	Disabled
Sample-02	3	Available	Enabled
Sample-03	4	Available	Enabled

## 3.9.4 Change registered printer information

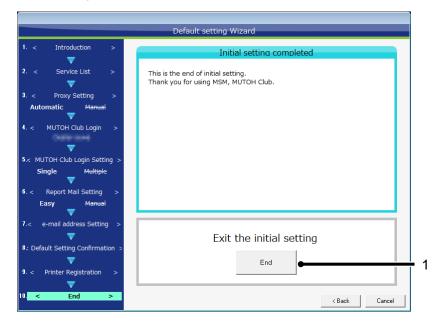
Change the printer information registered to MSM.



No.	Name	Description
1	Printer Name	Enter a printer registration name that you want to change the registered printer information.
2	IP Address	Enter an IP address of the printer that you want to change the registered printer information.
3	Control right	Check the box to provide the MSM with a control right for the printer to be changed. Users who have control right can update the Smart/C. * If other MSM has control rights, the control right will not be available. * When the printer receives no communication from a user who obtains the control right for 3 minutes, the control right will be opened, and the printer gives other users a permission to obtain the control right.
4	MUTOH Print Server(MPS)	Check the box to enable MPS for the printer to be changed.
5	Search Printer	Search an appropriate printer from the same network segment and check that whether the IP address of the printer has been changed. If changed, the new IP address will be displayed in the IP Address field.
6	Menu(Enter)	Apply the changes. If no changes are made, this button will be disabled.

## 3.10. Initial setting completed

This is the end of initial setting.



No.	Name	Description
1	End	Exit the initial setting.

# 4. Start/Exit

## 4.1. Start

When the installation of MSM is complete, the program will be registered and a shortcut will be created on the desktop.

Start MSM using either of the following two methods.

- Click [Start]-[All Programs]-[Mutoh]-[Mutoh Status Monitor]
- Double click [Mutoh Status Monitor] icon on desktop.



• If MSM is already running, please note that multiple applications of MSM cannot be opened.

# 4.2. Task Tray Icon

MSM icon will be displayed on the task bar when the MSM starts.

Click the right mouse button to display the menu.



No.	Name	Description
1	Open	The MSM main screen will appear.
2	Printer Registration	The printer registration screen will appear.
3	Exit	Exit the MSM.

# 4.3. Title bar

Click the minimize button on the title bar to minimize the MSM.

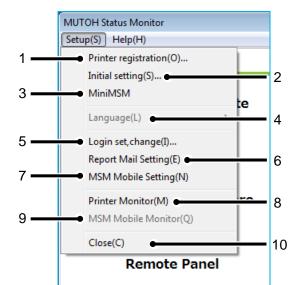
			– – ×
Login ID: –		PR Monitor	VSM Mobile
🕒 Status Mon	iitor		
			Enlarge
		1	
		U Login ID: –	

No.	Name	Description
1	Minimize	Minimize MSM, leaving the icon on the taskbar.

# 5. MSM Setting

# 5.1. Setting

Perform various settings for MSM.



No.	Name	Description	
1	Printer Registration	Register the printer to be managed by MSM. Refer to "3.9 Printer Registration" for the details.	
2	Initial Setting	Perform the initial setting for the MSM. Refer to "3.Initial Setting" for the details.	
3	MiniMSM	The MSM window can be downsized by enabling MiniMSM. With this feature, some functions are limited.	
4	Language *1	Configure the language displayed in the MSM. Choose a language from the list. When enabling the language setting, a message to terminate the program will be displayed. If you are done selecting the language, it is OK to terminate the program, click "OK" button. Confirmation of language switching Terminate the application to switch the language. OR Terminate the application to switch the language. OR Confirmation effect when the program is restarted.	
5	Login Set, Change	Log in to MSM. Refer to "3.4 MUTOH Club Login" for details.	
6	E-mail Notification Setting	Set up the mail notification system. Refer to "9.Report Mail" for details.	

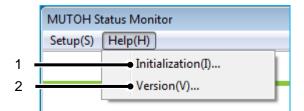
No.	Name	Description
7	VSM Mobile Setting	Set up the VSM Mobile. Refer to "11.1.2 MSM Setting" for details.
8	Printer Monitor	The registered printer will be automatically monitored. When operating with "Smart/C Automatic Update", the Smart/C of each printer can be updated automatically.
9	VSM Mobile Monitor	Enable the communication from VSM Mobile.
10	Close	Close the MSM main window.



\*1 Available under Japanese OS. For other OS, only English is available.

# 5.2. Help

Check information about MSM.

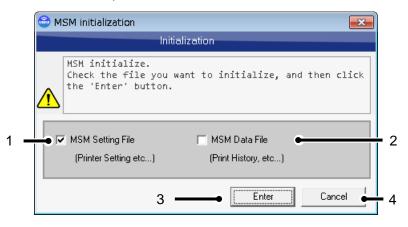


No.	Name	Description
1	Initialization	Initialize the MSM settings. * Perform the initialization when the operation of MSM is unstable.
2	Version	The MSM version information will be displayed.

#### 5.2.1 Initialization

Initialize the MSM settings.

Perform the initialization when the operation of MSM is unstable.



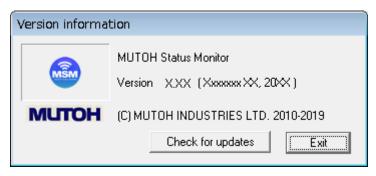
No.	Name	Description
1	MSM Setting File *1	Delete the MSM settings files listed below: - MSM Setting File - Report Mail - VSM Mobile - MPS - Temporary File
2	MSM Data File *2	Delete the SM data files listed below: - Print History - Color Verify
3	Enter	Initialize the file selected.
4	Cancel	Exit the initialization dialog without initialization.

- \*1 After the initialization is complete, MSM will exit. To configure the initial settings, restart MSM.
- \*2 The history data listed above will be deleted after the initialization. The data cannot be retrieved once deleted.

## 5.2.2 Version

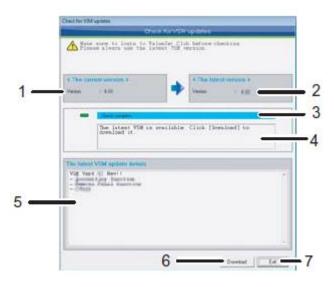
- 1. Click [Help]-[Version].
- 2. To check for the MSM updates, click [Check for updates].
- 3. Exit the version information menu.

Click "Exit" button to close the dialogue box.



## 5.2.2.1. Check and download the latest MSM version

To use the latest MSM, check and download the latest available MSM version from MUTOH Club.



No.	Name	Description
1	The current version	Display the currently running MSM version.
2	The latest version	Display the latest available MSM version after checking from MUTOH Club.
3	Status	Display the update check status and download status.
4	Detail	Display the check status details, download procedure and error message.
5	MSM update details	Display the update details for the latest available MSM version after checking from MUTOH Club.
6	Download	Allow you to download the latest available MSM after checking from MUTOH Club.
7	Exit	Exit the menu.

- Make sure to login to MUTOH Club before checking for available updates.
- The downloaded file is compressed in ZIP format. Unzip it and install MSM.

# 6. Menu

This chapter describes the MSM menu.

	MUTOH Status Monitor Setup( <u>S</u> ) Help( <u>H</u> )	
	Menu	Login ID: @mutoh.co.jp 🛑 1 PR Monitor 🗌 VSM Mobile
	Date and Time Update User Type Edit Firmware Update Check current firmware	Printer Information       Printer List :       V3-426UF       Printer Serial No. :       IP Address :
2 —	Print History     Remote Panel	Firmware Version M / C:     /       Success     : Control Right
	Printer Info. Backup Printer Info. Upload	Detail Info.   Status Info.   S/C Info.   Head/Cartridge Info.   Status Information Date(YYYY-NM-DD-HH:NM)   Contents
	Exit(MSM Minimize)	2019-05-23         Directory           2019-05-23         10:39           No Media         2019-05-23           2019-05-23         10:39           Shake Cartridge. No. : 6

No.	Name	Description
1	User Setting Information	Information regarding user settings will be displayed. Refer to "6.1 User Setting Information" for details.
2	Menu	Functions available for the MSM can be selected. Refer to "6.2 Menu" for the details.
3	Status Monitor	Monitor the status of current printer. Refer to "7.Status monitor" for the details.

# 6.1. User Setting Information

Information regarding user settings will be displayed.

Menu	Login ID:	Dmutoh.co.jp	PR Mo	nitor VSM Mobile		
Hond	Status Monitor	5				
ate and Time Update						
		<u>Printer</u>	Information			
User Type Edit	Printer List :		Printer Model :	10.52817		
Firmware Update	VJ-426UF		Printer Serial No. :	10.12817		
eck current firmware			IP Address :	tour tour tour tour		
eck current minware			Firmware Version M / C :	9.99F / 9.99F		
Print History	Success		: Control Right	Info Check		
Remote Panel						
	Detail Info. Status Info. S/C Info. Head/Cartridge Info.					
Printer Info. Backup		Status	Information			
Printer Info. Upload	Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM					
Exit(MSM Minimize)	2019-05-23 10:39 2019-05-23 10:39	No Media In sleep mode				
EXIL(MSM MINIMIZE)	2019-05-23 10:39	Shake Cartridge	. No. : 6			

No.	Name	Description
1	Login ID	The login ID for Mutoh Club will be displayed. Only the update of Smart/C are available using the MSCF without login. The Smart/C cannot be updated with the Mutoh Club.
2	PR Monitor	Displays whether the printer is automatically monitored or not. : Monitoring the Printer : Not Monitoring the Printer
3	VSM Mobile	Displays whether the printer is automatically monitored or not. : Monitoring the VSM Mobile : Not Monitoring the VSM Mobile

## 6.2. Menu

Available functions with MSM.

		MUTOH Status Monitor					
		Setup( <u>S</u> ) Help( <u>H</u> )					
		Menu	Login ID: @m	utoh.co.jp	PR Mo	nitor VSM Mobile	
			🕒 Status Monitor				
1		Date and Time Update		Printer I	nformation		
2		User Type Edit	Printer List :	<u>. 1 111 (er 1</u>	Printer Model :	10 12817	
3		Firmware Update	VJ-426UF		Printer Serial No. :	10.10807	
4		Check current firmware			IP Address : Firmware Version M / C :	NUM NUM NUM NUM	
5		Print History	Success		Control Right	Info Check	
6	-	Remote Panel					
7		Printer Info. Backup	Detail Info. Status Info. S/C	Info. Head/Cartridge Status I	nformation		
8		Printer Info. Upload	Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM) 2019-05-23 10:39	Contents No Media			
9		• Exit(MSM Minimize)	2019-05-23 10:39 2019-05-23 10:39 2019-05-23 10:39	In sleep mode Shake Cartridge.	No. : 6		

NOTE

• The available functions vary according to printer model.

No.	Name	Description
1	Date and Time Update	Set the date and time setting of printer to be matched with PC setting. Refer to "6.2.1 Date and Time Update" for the details.
2	Media Type Edit	The name of user media can be edited for the printer. Refer to "6.2.2 Media Type Edit" for the details.
3	Firmware Update	Update the printer firmware. * The firmware data is required. Refer to "6.2.3 Firmware Update" for the details.
4	Check current firmware	Check current firmware for the MB-Web via the Internet. Refer to "6.2.4 Check the Latest Firmware" for the details.
-	ColorVerify	Execute the Color Verify. Refer to "10 ColorVerify" for the details.
5	Print History	This function allows MSM to get print history information from printer and monitor the history. Refer to "12 Print History" for the details.
6	Remote Panel	This function allows you to check the current panel setting in your printer and perform test pattern printing. Refer to "13 Remote Panel" for the details.

No.	Name	Description
7	Printer Information Backup	Save the printer information on a disk. Refer to "6.2.5 Printer Information Backup" for the details.
8	Printer Information Upload	With an internet connection to the MUTOH Club server, upload the printer information to the server. Refer to "6.2.6 Printer Information Upload" for the details.
9	Exit(MSM Minimize)	Minimize the MSM. Refer to the "6.2.7 Exit (MSM Minimize)" for the details.

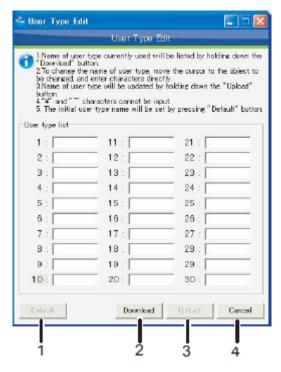
## 6.2.1 Date and Time Update

Set the date and time setting of printer to be matched with PC setting.



- Check that the date and time setting of PC is correct.
- This function will not be available when the printer has limitation.

## 6.2.2 Media Type Edit



No.	Name	Name Description	
1         Default         Initialize the name of user media and the list of user type name.		Initialize the name of user media and the list of user type name.	
2 Download Acquire the current user media list that is registered in the printer.		Acquire the current user media list that is registered in the printer.	
3 Upload Send the edited user media list to the printer to update the user media		Send the edited user media list to the printer to update the user media list.	
4	Cancel	Cancel the editing of user media.	

## NOTE

• The function name varies by the model.

## 6.2.3 Firmware Update

Update the printer firmware.

Please check the notes and follow the procedure below to update the firmware.

#### Procedure > 6.2.3.1 Select the Firmware File

- 6.2.3.2 Check the Firmware File
- 6.2.3.3 Printer Update Preparation
- 6.2.3.4 Send the Firmware File
- 6.2.3.5 Update the Firmware
- 6.2.3.6 Completion of Firmware Update

- Do not turn off the printer and unplug the cable while updating the firmware. In that case, the firmware update will not complete normally, and the printer may not be started.
- The firmware file is needed to update the firmware.
- The older version than the firmware installed in the printer cannot be updated.
- The update is available when the message "Ready to Print" is displayed on the printer panel. The update is not available while printing and operating.
- Check that the printer and blower heater are in standby status, in order to update the firmware for blower heater.
  - 1. The main power supply of blower heater is set to "ON".
  - 2. The "Link" switch of blower heater is set to "Manual".
  - 3. The "RUN/STOP" switch of blower heater is set to "STOP".

## 6.2.3.1. Select the Firmware File

Select the firmware file to update.

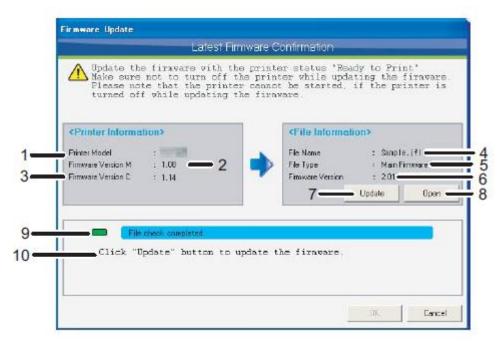
There are two types of firmware file.

Update Look in	Desktop			•	+ 📾 💣 (		×
9				_			-
Recent Places							
Desktop							
Libraries							
Computer							
Network							
	File name:				•	Ope	an
	Files of type:	E/W fik	a(".ifl;".mfl;".rfl)		•	Can	cel

Extension	Contents
jfl	Firmware Data for Main
mfl	Firmware Data for Controller
rfl	Firmware Data for Blower Heater

## 6.2.3.2. Check the Firmware File

Check the contents of selected firmware file.



No.	Name	Description
1	Printer Model	Display the model name of the printer.
2	Firmware Version M	Display the main firmware version of the printer.
3	Firmware Version C	Display the controller firmware version of the printer.
4	File Name	Display the name of selected firmware file.
5	File Type	Display the type of selected firmware file.
6	Firmware Version	Display the version of selected firmware file.
7	Update	If there is no problem with the selected firmware file, buttons will be valid, and the firmware can be updated.
8	Open	The firmware file selection screen will be displayed. Refer to "6.2.3.1 Select the Firmware File" for the details.
9	Status	Display the status of firmware update.
10	Detailed Information	Display the detail information of firmware update.

## 6.2.3.3. Printer Update Preparation

Click "Update" button to shift to the update mode. Please wait until the printer shifts to the update mode.

Firmware Update		
Latest Firmware C	Confirmation	
Update the firmware with the print Make sure not to turn off the prin Please note that the printer canno turned off while updating the firm	ter while upda t be started,	ting the firmware.
<printer information=""></printer>	<file informat<="" th=""><th>ion&gt;</th></file>	ion>
Printer Model :	File Name	
Firmware Version M : 1.08 Firmware Version C : 1.14	File Type Firmware Version	: Main Firmware : 2.01
		Update Open
Preparing to update Preparing to update. Please wait.	2	
		OK. Cancel

- It may take a few minutes to shift to the update mode.
- If the printer does not shift to the update mode, click "Cancel" button and restart the printer.

## 6.2.3.4. Send the Firmware File

When the printer is shifted to the update mode, the selected firmware file will be sent to the printer automatically. Please wait.

Firmware Update		
Latest Firmware C	Confirmation	
Update the firmware with the print Make sure not to turn off the prin Please note that the printer canno turned off while updating the firm	ter while updating the firmware. It be started, if the printer is	
Printer Information> Printer Model : Firmware Version M : 1.08 Firmware Version C : 1.14	<pre><file information=""> File Name : Sample.jfl File Type : Main Firmware Firmware Version : 2.01 Update Open</file></pre>	
Sending the firmware(1/1) Sending the firmware to printer.	Please wait.	

- It may take a few minutes to send the firmware file.
- Once the firmware file is sent to the printer, the update cannot be canceled.
- Do not turn off the printer and unplug the cable while sending the firmware file. In that case, the firmware update will not complete normally, and the printer may not be started.

## 6.2.3.5. Update the Firmware

When the printer received the firmware file, the printer executes firmware update. Please wait.

During firmware update, the MSM monitors the printer until the firmware update is completed. If the firmware update is not completed, click "Cancel" button to stop monitoring.

\* The firmware update cannot be canceled even the monitoring is stopped by pressing "Cancel" button. If you stopped the monitoring, please check the update status on the printer panel.

Firmware Update		
Latest Firmware Confirmation		
Update the firmware with the printe Make sure not to turn off the print Please note that the printer cannot turned off while updating the firms	ter while updating the firmware. t be started, if the printer is	
<pre></pre>	<file information=""> File Name : Sample.jfl File Type : Main Firmware Firmware Version : 2.01 Update Open</file>	
The printer update will not be ca update monitoring is canceled. Check the update status on the op update monitoring is canceled.		

- It may take a few minutes to update the firmware.
- Do not turn off the printer while updating. The printer may not be started normally.

## 6.2.3.6. Completion of Firmware Update

When the firmware update is completed, restart the printer.

Firmware Update	
Latest Firmware Co	onfirmation
Update the firmware with the printe Make sure not to turn off the print Please note that the printer cannot turned off while updating the firmw	er while updating the firmware. be started, if the printer is
<printer information=""></printer>	<file information=""></file>
Printer Model : Firmware Version M : 1.08 Firmware Version C : 1.14	File Name : Sample.jfl File Type : Main Firmware Firmware Version : 2.01 Update Open
The update of printer firmware has the printer.	s been completed. Restart
	OK Cancel

## NOTE

• Even the firmware update is completed, the printer is still in the update mode. Therefore, make sure to restart the printer.

#### 6.2.4 Check the Latest Firmware

Check with MUTOH Club if the firmware version in the printer is latest. When a newer firmware version exists, download the latest firmware file and update the firmware.

Please check the notes and follow the procedure below to check the latest firmware.

- Procedure > 6.2.4.1 Check the Latest Firmware Version
  - 6.2.4.2 Check the Firmware Change History
  - 6.2.4.3 Check the Special Firmware
  - 6.2.4.4 Firmware File Download
  - 6.2.4.5 Check the Firmware Update
  - 6.2.4.6 Printer Update Preparation
  - 6.2.4.7 Send the Firmware File
  - 6.2.4.8 Update the Firmware
  - 6.2.4.9 Completion of Firmware Update

- When following conditions are met, you can check the latest firmware.
  - Have Internet connection
  - Already log in to MUTOH Club
- Do not turn off the printer and unplug the cable while updating the firmware. In that case, the firmware update will not complete normally, and the printer may not be started.
- The older version than the firmware installed in the printer cannot be updated.
- The update is available when the message "Ready to Print" is displayed on the printer panel. The update is not available while printing and operating.
- Check that the printer and blower heater are in standby status, in order to update the firmware for blower heater.
  - 1. The main power supply of blower heater is set to "ON".
  - 2. The "Link" switch of blower heater is set to "Manual".
  - 3. The "RUN/STOP" switch of blower heater is set to "STOP".

## 6.2.4.1. Check the Latest Firmware Version

Check the latest firmware version with MUTOH Club.

The following procedure will be executed automatically to check the latest firmware version.

- 1. Acquire the printer information
- 2. Check the latest firmware version with MUTOH Club

When the latest firmware does not exist, the window below will be displayed.

Latest Firmware Confirmation	
Latest Firmware	Confirmation
Update the firmware with the prin Make sure not to turn off the prin Please note that the printer cann turned off while updating the fir	inter while updating the firmware. Not be started, if the printer is
<pre></pre>	Kast Firmware Information> Firmware Type : Firmware Version :
The latest firmware does not exist.	
	OK Cancel

When the latest firmware version exists, the change history window will be displayed.

Refer to the next page for the details.

#### 6.2.4.2. Check the Firmware Change History

When the latest firmware version exists, the change history window will be displayed.

Check the contents of change history, and click "Update" button to update the firmware. Refer to "6.2.4.4 Firmware File Download" for the details.

Click "OK" button to exit without updating the firmware.

test Firmware Information	Special Firmware Information
	<latest confirmation="" firmware=""></latest>
Check the char	ravere of currently-used printer exists nge history, and click "Update" hutton to update the are to the latest version.
dependang on	ware is updated, the printer should be readjusted the changed contents and update the firaware
d alest Firmware late	omotion?
Fittaware Type	• Nan Firmware Firmware Vetacin = 2.01
Firmwore Change H	listory?
Main Firsware	
OT IS SHALLING MAN	COM TO THE COMMUNICATE MODIFY AND THE REAL
10.00	tor, the parent.
i married th	
	Contraction of State
	A COLOR OF
	La contra da contra en contra da contra

No.	Name	Description
1	Firmware Type	Display the firmware type.
2	Firmware Version	Display the firmware version.
3	Firmware Change History	Display the firmware change history.
4	Update	Click "Update" button to update to the firmware.
5	ОК	Click "OK" button to check and exit without updating the firmware.

NOTE

• Readjustment will be required depending on the changed content. Therefore, check the changed contents and update the firmware.

## 6.2.4.3. Check the Special Firmware

When a special firmware exists, a special firmware information window will be displayed.

Check the change history, and contact to the dealer to update the firmware.

atest Firmware Confirmat atest Firmware Information		
rest i transfer a secondate i 15	<special confirmation="" firmware=""></special>	
The Special first	ware of currently-used printer exists.	
A special first that cannot be a	are is a firaware having a special modif updated by the VSM. update the firaware, please contact to t	
Special Firmware Info	mation>	
Famware Type	Man Fimware Fimware Version : 3.00	
<firmware change="" hist<="" td=""><td>lorys</td><td></td></firmware>	lorys	
Main Firmware		1
The state of the second	A PERSONAL PROPERTY AND ADDRESS OF A	
C DESCRIPTION TO A	China Committee	
ALC: NAMES OF ALC: N	THE COMPANY AND A	
18.15		
No. 14 Sufficient Strength	NAME IN THE PART AND	
15.14		
and such that the second state of the		
		OK.

NOTE

• A special firmware is a firmware having a special modification that cannot be updated by the MSM. If you want to update the firmware, please contact to the dealer.

## 6.2.4.4. Firmware File Download

Download the latest firmware file from MUTOH Club.

Specify the destination to save the file, and start download.

Save the last	firmware				
Save in	E Desktop		٠	← 🗈 🖆 🔝 •	
Recert Places					Â
Desktop					
Lbraries					
Computer					
Network					
	File came:	Sample (II		*	Save
	Save as type:	F/W fie(*fl;*ml;*fl)		*	Cancel

irmware Update		
Latest Firmware C	Confirmation	
Update the firmware with the print Make sure not to turn off the prin Please note that the printer canno turned off while updating the firm	ter while upda t be started,	ting the firmware.
<printer information=""></printer>	<file informat<="" th=""><th>ion&gt;</th></file>	ion>
Printer Model :	File Name	: Sample.jfl
Firmware Version M : 1.08	File Type	: Main Firmware
Firmware Version C : 1,14	Firmware Version	: 2.01
		Update Open
Downloading the latest firmware(1/1). Downloading the latest firmware f wait.	from MB-Web ser	rver. Please
		OK Cancel

## NOTE

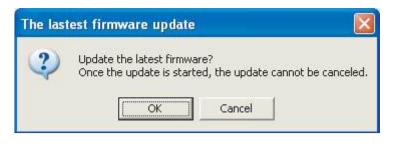
• The downloaded firmware file can be updated separately using "6.2.3 Firmware Update" function.

## 6.2.4.5. Check the Firmware Update

After the firmware download is completed, the confirmation window below will be displayed.

Click "OK" button to update the firmware.

Click "Cancel" button to exit without updating the firmware.



- Once you proceed to the next step, the firmware update cannot be stopped.
- Do not turn off the printer and unplug the cable while updating the firmware. In that case, the firmware update will not complete normally, and the printer may not be started.
- The update is available when the message "Ready to Print" is displayed on the printer panel. The update is not available while printing and operating.

## 6.2.4.6. Printer Update Preparation

Click "Update" button to shift to the update mode. Please wait until the printer shifts to the update mode.

Firmware Update			
Latest Firmware C	onfirmation		
Update the firmware with the print Make sure not to turn off the print Please note that the printer cannot turned off while updating the firm	ter while upda t be started,	ting the firmware.	
<printer information=""></printer>	<file informat<="" th=""><th>ion&gt;</th></file>	ion>	
Printer Model :	File Name	: Sample.jfl	
Firmware Version M : 1.08	File Type	: Main Firmware	
Firmware Version C : 1,14	Firmware Version	: 2.01	
Preparing to update. Preparing to update. Please wait.		Update Open	
		OK Cancel	

- It may take a few minutes to shift to the update mode.
- If the printer does not shift to the update mode, click "Cancel" button and restart the printer.

## 6.2.4.7. Send the Firmware File

When the printer is shifted to the update mode, the downloaded firmware file will be sent to the printer automatically. Please wait.

Firmware Update		
Latest Firmware C	onfirmation	
Update the firmware with the print. Make sure not to turn off the prin Please note that the printer canno turned off while updating the firm	ter while upda t be started,	ating the firmware.
<pre></pre>	<file informat<br="">File Name File Type Firmware Version</file>	: Sample.jfl : Main Firmware
Sending the firmware(1/1) Sending the firmware to printer.	Please wait.	OK Cancel

- It may take a few minutes to send the firmware file.
- Once the firmware file is sent to the printer, the update cannot be canceled.
- Do not turn off the printer and unplug the cable while sending the firmware file. In that case, the firmware update will not complete normally, and the printer may not be started.

## 6.2.4.8. Update the Firmware

When the printer received the firmware file, the printer executes firmware update. Please wait.

During firmware update, the MSM monitors the printer until the firmware update is completed. If the firmware update is not completed, click "Cancel" button to stop monitoring.

\* The firmware update cannot be canceled even the monitoring is stopped by pressing "Cancel" button. If you stopped the monitoring, please check the update status on the printer panel.

Firmware Update		
Latest Firmware Confirmation		
Update the firmware with the printe Make sure not to turn off the print Please note that the printer cannot turned off while updating the firmw	er while updating the firmware. be started, if the printer is	
<printer information=""> Printer Model : Firmware Version M : 1.08 Firmware Version C : 1.14</printer>	<file information=""> File Name : Sample.jfl File Type : Main Firmware Firmware Version : 2.01 Update Open</file>	
Updating(1/1) The printer update will not be can update monitoring is canceled. Check the update status on the ope update monitoring is canceled.		

- It may take a few minutes to update the firmware.
- Do not turn off the printer while updating. The printer may not be started normally.

## 6.2.4.9. Completion of Firmware Update

When the firmware update is completed, restart the printer.

Firmware Update			
Latest Firmware C	onfirmation		
Update the firmware with the print Make sure not to turn off the prin Please note that the printer canno- turned off while updating the firm	ter while upda t be started,	ting the	firmware.
<printer information=""></printer>	<file information=""></file>		
Printer Model :	File Name	: Sample	e.jfl
Firmware Version M : 1.08	File Type	: Main F	irmware
Firmware Version C : 1,14	Firmware Version	: 2.01	-
	_	Update	Open
The update completed. The update of printer firmware hat the printer.	s been comple	ted. Resta	rt
		ОК	Cancel

- NOTE
- Even the firmware update is completed, the printer is still in the update mode. Therefore, make sure to restart the printer.

### 6.2.5 Printer Information Backup

Save the printer information on a disk.

When consulting your dealer on an error occurred in the printer, this printer information helps them to analyze the cause of the error in advance and smoothly solve the problem.

When requested from your dealer, use this function to save the printer information on your computer disk and send it to your dealer by e-mail.



• Depending on an error or conditions of the printer, MSM may not be able to obtain printer information from the printer.

## 6.2.6 Printer Information Upload

With an internet connection to the MUTOH Club server, upload the printer information to the server. When using MSM online, by sharing the printer information via MUTOH Club with your dealer to ask help for error on the printer, they can analyze the cause of the error in advance and smoothly solve the problem. When requested from your dealer, use this function to upload the printer information to the MUTOH Club server.



• To use this function, use MSM with internet connection and log in to MUTOH Club.

### 6.2.7 Exit (MSM Minimize)

Minimize the MSM. To redisplay the MSM, click the MSM icon on the task tray. Refer to the "4.2 Task Tray Icon" for details.

# 7. Status monitor

The status monitor displays status information from the printer.

No.	Name	Description	
1	Printer Information	Basic monitored information from the printer will be displayed. Refer to "7.1 Printer Information" for details.	
2	Detailed Information	If an error has been detected with the printer, possible causes and the solution will be displayed. Refer to "7.2 Detail Information" for explanation.	
3	Status Information	The status information of printer will be displayed. Refer to "7.3 Status Information" for details.	
4	Smart/C Information	Printer Smart/C information will be displayed. Refer to "7.4 Smart/C Information" for details.	
5	Heater Information	Heater information of the printer will be displayed. Refer to "7.5 Heater Information" for details.	
6	Head / Cartridge Information	The print head and cartridge information of the printer will be displayed. Refer to "7.6 Head/Cartridge Information" for details.	
7	S/C Card Information	S/C Card information of the printer will be displayed. Refer to "7.7 S/C Card Information" for details.	
8	Media Information	Media information of the printer will be displayed. Refer to "7.8 Media Information" for details.	
9	Print Information	Print information of the printer will be displayed. Refer to "7.9 Print Information" for details.	

NOTE

• Functionality varies according to printer model.

## 7.1. Printer Information

Basic information for monitored printers will be displayed.

.

🕒 Status Monitor	Printer Inf	ormation	
Printer List :		Printer Model:	
Sample-01		Printer Serial No. :	Includes -
		IP Address:	
		Firmware Version M / C :	/
Success	8	- Control Right	Start

No.	Name	Description	
1	Printer information (Display/Hide detailed information)	Click the printer information label to display or hide the detailed information. For details regarding display/ hide, refer to the "7.1.1 Display the Details Information".	
2	Printer Model Name	Displays the model name of the printer that has been monitored.	
3	Printer Serial Number	Displays the serial number of the printer that has been monitored.	
4	Printer List	A list of registered printers will be displayed; the communication status of each printer will also be displayed. The registration name that you specified during registration will be displayed on the list. : Communication Succeeded : Occurrence of Error : Occurrence of warning	
5	IP Address	Displays the IP address of the printer that has been monitored.	
6	Firmware Version	Displays the firmware version of the printer that has been monitored. M : Main C : Controller	
7	Communication Status	Displays the communication status of the printer that has been monitored.	
8	Control Right	Displays the control right of the printer that has been monitored. : Control Right Exists : Control Right Does Not Exist	
9	Start	Obtains printer information.	

### 7.1.1 Display the Details Information

Specify whether to display the detailed information or not.

#### Info: OFF

MUTOH Status Monitor Setup( <u>S</u> ) Help( <u>H</u> )			
Menu	Login ID: -	PR M	fonitor VSM Mobile
Date and Time Update	G Status Monitor	Printer Information	
User Type Edit	Printer List :	Printer Model :	10.5287
Firmware Update	Sample	Printer Serial No. :	10.5281
Check current firmware		IP Address :	YOM YOM YOM YOM
Print History Remote Panel Printer Info. Backup	Success	Firmware Version M / C :	/ Info Check
Printer Info. Upload Exit(MSM Minimize)			

## Info: ON(\*Default)

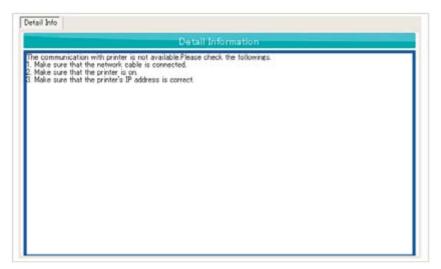
MUTOH Status Monitor				
Setup( <u>S</u> ) Help( <u>H</u> )				
Menu	Login ID: –		PR Mo	onitor VSM Mobile
Date and Time Update	🕑 Status Monitor	<u>Printer I</u>	nformation	
User Type Edit	Printer List :		Printer Model :	10.5287
Firmware Update	Sample		Printer Serial No. :	10.52817
Check current firmware			IP Address : Firmware Version M / C :	NUME NUME NUME NUME
Print History	Success		: Control Right	Info Check
Remote Panel	Detail Info. Status Info. S/C	Info. Head/Cartridge	Info.	
Printer Info. Backup			nformation	
Printer Info. Upload	Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM) 2019-05-29 08:45	Contents No Media		
Exit(MSM Minimize)	2019-05-29 08:45 2019-05-29 08:45	In sleep mode Shake Cartridge.	No. : 12346	

## 7.2. Detail Information

Displays information regarding communication errors with a monitored printer.

Error causes will be displayed. Please resolve errors using content information.

Ex. The printer is OFF.



# 7.3. Status Information

The status information of printer under monitoring will be displayed.

	Status Information	
Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM)	Contents	
	Internet of the second	

# 7.4. Smart/C Information

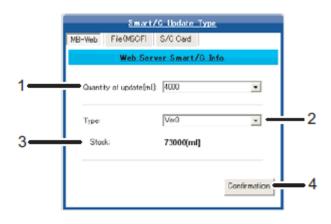
Displays Smart/C information for a printer that has been monitored.

	Smart/C Informa	ition	
1 🗕	Smart/C Update Type	Smart/C Information	- 2
	MB-Web File(MSCF) S/C Card	Max: 24 [L]	
	Web Server Smart/C Info		
		Smart/C[%]	
	Quantity of update[ml]: 4000 ▼	100 -	
	Type: Ver3 💌	50 <b>-</b> -	
	Stock: 280000[ml]	o 🔟 🔤	
	Confirmation	UpDate	

No.	Name	Description
1	Smart/C Update Type	The type of Smart/C to be updated will be displayed. Refer to the "7.4.1 Update the Smart/C with MB-Web" and the "7.4.2 Update the Smart/C with the Update File (MSCF)" for details.
2	Smart/C Information	Displays Smart/C information for a printer that has been monitored. Refer to the "7.4.4 Smart/C Information" for details.

#### 7.4.1 Update the Smart/C with MB-Web

Obtain and display Smart/C information available via an Internet connection from MUTOH Club.

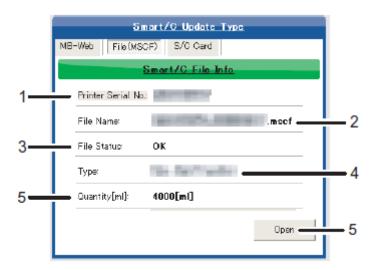


No.	Name	Description
1	Quantity of Update [ml]	Select the quantity of Smart/C to update. * The selectable quantity of update varies according to printer model.
2	Туре	Select the type of Smart/C to update.
3	Stock	Displays the stock of the Smart/C that is selected in No. 2. * If the quanity of stock is less than the quantity of update, the update cannot be executed.
4	Confirmation	Obtain the latest Smart/C information from MUTOH Club. * This information cannot be obtained without login to MUTOH Club.

- This function may not be available depending on the model.
- This tab can only be displayed only when "Internet connection is available" is selected in the Internet connection setting.

## 7.4.2 Update the Smart/C with the Update File (MSCF)

The MSCF information will be displayed.

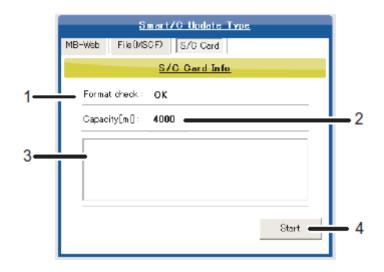


No.	Name	Description
1	Printer Serial No.	Displays the serial number of the monitored printer.
2	File Name	Displays the file name of the loaded MSCF.
3	File Status	Displays the status of the loaded MSCF. The status will be detected as an error according to conditions. *If the MSCF is not for the appropriate printer *If the MSCF is already updated
4	Туре	Displays the type of Smart/C for the loaded MSCF.
5	Quantity [ml]	Displays the quantity of Smart/C for the loaded MSCF in ml.
6	Open	Select the MSCF to load.

- This function may not be available depending on the model.
- MSCF : Smart/C Update File

## 7.4.3 Update the Smart/C with S/C Card

S/C card information will be displayed.

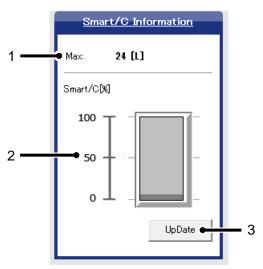


No.	Name	Description
1	Format check	The status of the read S/C card will be displayed.
2	Capacity[ml]	The capacity of the read S/C card will be displayed in ml.
3	Detail Information	The reason for the S/C card reading error will be displayed.
4	Start-Stop	Check and cancel the reading of S/C card.

- This function may not be available depending on the model.
- Please use the S/C card reader and writer that we recommend.
   S/C card reader and writer that we don't recommend cannot be used.
   For S/C card reader and writer we recommend, please contact the dealer.

### 7.4.4 Smart/C Information

Displays the Smart/C information of the printer that has been monitored.



No.	Name	Description
1	Max	Displays the maximum Smart/C of the printer that has been monitored. * The Smart/C MAX varies according to printer model.
2	Smart/C Amount	Displays in % the remaining amount of Smart/C of the printer that has been monitored.
3	Update	Click the "Update" button to update to the Smart/C. Refer to the "7.4.4.1 Smart/C Update" for details.

#### 7.4.4.1. Smart/C Update

When conditions for Smart/C update are met, the "Update" button will be available, then click the button to update the Smart/C.

## NOTE

- To update the Smart/C with MUTOH Club, transfer the service information of the printer to the MB-Web.
- To update the Smart/C with the S/C card, make sure not to remove the S/C card during the update. If the S/C card is removed during the update, the Smart/C update will not be completed normally.
- The Smart/C cannot be updated unless all of the conditions below are met.
  - Update using MUTOH Club
    - User login has been completed.
    - The available quantity of Smart/C stock is sufficient.
  - Update using MSCF
    - MSCF is valid.
  - Update the S/C card
    - The S/C card is valid.

Common Condition

- The available quantity of Smart/C updates is within limits.
- Control rights have been assigned.

# 7.5. Heater Information

## 7.5.1 Heater Information

Checks information for Heater of printers that have been monitored.

De	etail Info Status Info Heater Info Head/Cartridge	Info S/C Into	
	Heater Inf	formation .	
1	Heat complete : Printing :	2	
3	Print temp         Wait T.O.           [C]         [F]         [min]           Pre:         38         100         60           Platen:         31         87         60           After:         Off         60	Heater Setup temp         (C)         (F)           Pre:         38         100           Platen:         31         87           After:         25         77	- 5

No.	Name	Description
1	Heating Up Completed	When the thermistor reached to the preset temperature, the indication will be changed to green.  : Reached to the Preset Temperature : Not Reached to the Preset Temperature
2	During Printing	When the printing is started after with the heating up completed, the indication will be changed to green. : Printing : Waiting
3	Type of Preset Temperature	Select the type of preset temperature. Printing Temperature:Temperature Setting for Printing Waiting Temperature:Temperature Setting for Waiting
4	Preset Temperature of Heaters	The temperature of each heater that is set by Type of Preset Temperature,standby heating will be displayed. Pre : Pre-Heater Platen : Platen Heater After : Dryer C : Celsius F : Fahrenheit
5	Temperature Condition	The actual temperature of each heater will be displayed. Pre : Pre-Heater Platen : Platen Heater After : Dryer C : Celsius F : Fahrenheit

#### 7.5.2 Blower Heater Information

Checks information for Blower Heater of printers that have been monitored.

	Detail Info Status Info Blower Heater Info S/C Info Head/Cartridge Info	
	Blower Heater Information	
	Since the blower heater is controlled independently, only a part of information can be checked. For the detailed information, check the panel of blower heater directly.	
1-	Heat complete : Printer Link Manual	-2

No.	Name	Description
1	Heating Up Completed	Displayed in green when the temperature reaches to the preset temperature. : Reached to the Preset Temperature : Not Reached to the Preset Temperature
2	Link	Display the operating method of heater. Printer Ling : Operate in conjunction with the printer. Manual : Heater operates by itself

# 7.6. Head/Cartridge Information

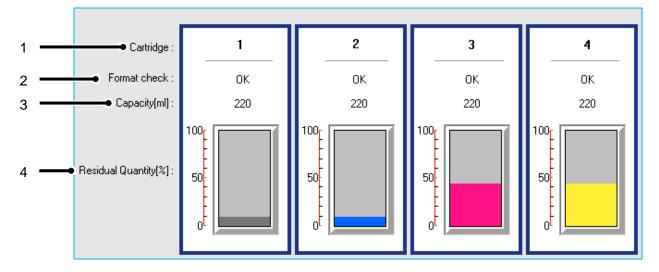
Checks information for the print head and cartridge of printers that have been monitored.

	Detail Info Status Info Heater Info Head/Cartridge Info S/C Info
	Head temp Information
1	Head1 : 24 [O] 75 [F] Head2 : [O] F [F]
	Cartridge Information
2	Centridge No.: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
3	
4	Irk near end:

No.	Name	Description	
1	Print Head Temperature	Displays the print head temperature of printers that have been monitored. C: Celsius F: Fahrenheit * The number of head displayed varies according to printer model.	
2	Cartridge No.	Displays the Cartridge No. * The number of cartridges displayed varies according to printer model.	
3	Status	Displays the status of cartridges in the printer that have been monitored. : Cartridge Inserted : No Cartridge	
4	Ink near end	The status of remaining ink amount is displayed. : The remaining ink amount is enough. : The remaining ink amount is low. *Not displayed depending on the model.	

# 7.7. S/C Card Information

Checks information for S/C Card of printers that have been monitored.



No.	Name	Description
1	No.	4 S/C are organized in 1 group.
2	Cartridge No.	The cartridge number of the printer, which has been monitored, will be displayed.
3	Format check	The S/C reading status of the printer, which has been monitored, will be displayed.
4	Color	The S/C color information of the printer, which has been monitored, will be displayed.
5	Capacity[ml]	The S/C ink capacity information of the printer, which has been monitored, will be displayed in "ml".
6	Residual Quantity[%]	The S/C remaining ink consume information of the printer, which has been monitored, will be displayed in % (1% basis).
7	Detailed Information	When a S/C card reading error occurs, put the mouse pointer over the "Reading" label to display the detail information. Refer to the "7.7.1 Format check" for details.

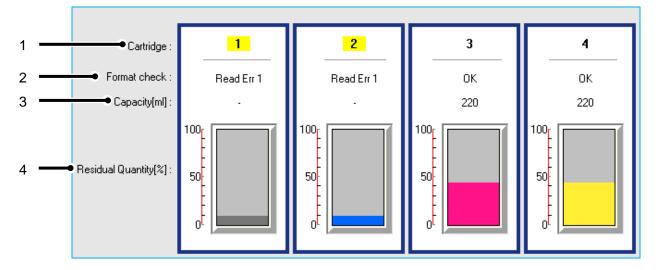
## 7.7.1 Format check

The S/C reading status of the printer, which has been monitored, will be displayed.

Name	Description
ОК	Reading completed normally.
-	No Information.
Read Err 1	Cannot read the S/C card.Please check the S/C card.
Read Err 2	
Read Err 3	
Col. Err	The S/C card you have inserted is for different color. Insert the dedicated S/C card.
Ink Err	The S/C cord you have incerted is unsurported incert the dedicated S/C
Code Err	<ul> <li>The S/C card you have inserted is unsupported. Insert the dedicated S/C card.</li> </ul>
Ink End	The ink has run out. Please replace the ink
Broken Chip 1 28.	The S/C card you have inserted is broken, so the S/C card cannot be used.
Size Err	Cartridge size unsupport.

### 7.7.2 S/C Card Recovery

While recovering S/C card, printing is still possible, but the printer is unable to obtain information from the S/C card. The ink capacity and ink level in the cartridge/bag are not displayed correctly.

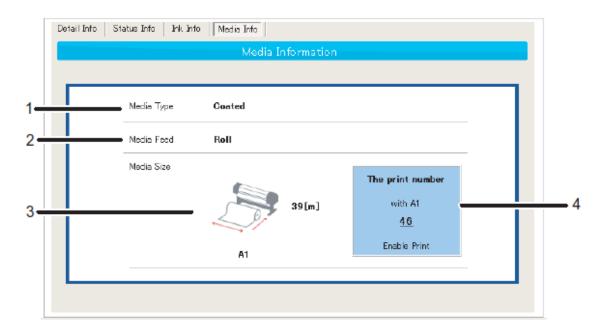


No.	Name	Description
1	Cartridge No.	The cartridge number is highlighted in yellow while in recovery state.
2	Format check	The S/C reading status of the printer, which has been monitored, will be displayed.
3	Capacity[ml]	In the recovery state, the display shows "-".
4	Residual Quantity[%] *1	In the recovery state, ink level is fixed to 10%.

- \*1 The ink level on the display is fixed to 10%. To check the actual ink level, an operator must physically check the amount of ink remaining in the cartridge/bag.
- The specification for S/C card recovery may vary by printer model. For details, see the latest printer's operation manual.

# 7.8. Media Information

The media information loaded in printer can be checked.



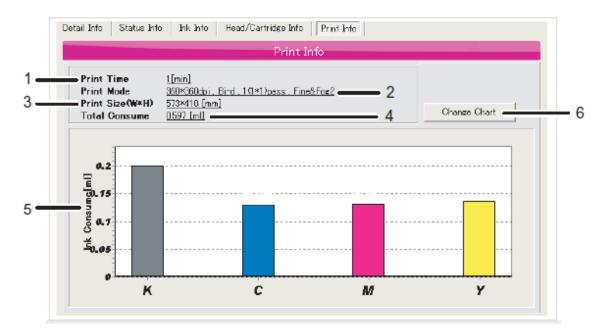
No.	Name	Description
1	Media Type	Display the media type loaded in printer.
2	Media Feed	Display the media feeding method loaded in printer.
3	Media Size	Display the media size loaded in printer.
4	The print number	Display the remaining printable number of media loaded in printer. * Valid only when the loaded media meet the conditions below: - Roll Media - Media with roll media management is valid * The printable number is an estimation.

NOTE

Support only USB connection

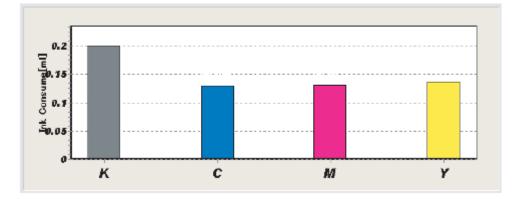
# 7.9. Print Information

The previous print information can be checked.

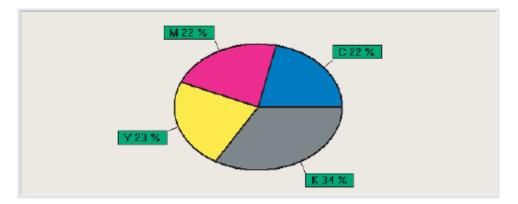


No.	Name	Description
1	Print Time	Display the time required for the previous print in minutes.
2	Print Mode	Display the settings for previous print.
3	Print Size (W * H)	Display the print size of previous print.
4	Total Consume	Display the total ink consumption of previous print.
5	Ink Consume	Display the ink consumption of each color for previous print.
6	Change Chart	Change the graph of ink consumption for previous print. * There are 2 types of graph.

## 1. Ink Consumption Graph



## 2. Ink Consumption Ratio Graph



# 8. Activation

## 8.1. Execute Activation via the Internet

Printer registration is not available without activation.

Connect MSM to the Internet, MSM will automatically access MB-Web and execute activation.

 When registering a printer with activation-unexecuted, the following message will be displayed. Click "OK" to execute activation.

Activation conf	firmation 🔀
Execution	e the activation?
OK	Cancel

2. Click "Internet connection is available".

🗠 Activation 🖉	×
Internet Connection Setting	
The activation will be executed. The activation method varies according to the connection setting to the Internet. Select the connection setting from below.	
<u>*Internet connection is available</u> Access to the Web server, and execute the activation manually.	
* Internet connection is not available	
Execute the activation from the MACF (Activation Code File),or by entering the Activation Code manually.	
Cancel	

🙅 Activation 🛛 🔀
In activation
Currently checking with the server. This may take a few minutes.
Serial No.

3. Accessing the MB-Web to obtain the "Activation Code" and executing Activation. Please wait.

4. When activation is complete, the following window appears.

- When activation is complete, service information from the printer will be registered to MUTOH Club.
- If an activation execution error occurs, contact your dealer and inform them of the "ErrCode".
- Once activation is completed, restart the printer.

🖗 Activation 🛛 🔀
Activation completion
The activation has been completed. The printer is ready to print.
Serial No.
OK

## 8.2. Execute Activation By Entering "Activation Code"

Printer registration is only available when the printer executes activation. If you do not access to the Internet, ask your dealer to issue an activation code or activation code file in order to execute activation.

 When registering a printer with activation-unexecuted, the following message will be displayed. Click "OK" to execute activation.

Activation confirmation 🛛		
Execute the activation?		
OK	Cancel	

2. Click "Internet connection is not available".

🚳 Activation 🛛 🔀		
Internet Connection Setting		
The activation will be executed. The activation method varies according to the connection setting to the Internet. Select the connection setting from below.		
<u>*Internet connection is available</u> Access to the Web server, and execute the activation manually.		
*Internet connection is not available		
Execute the activation from the MACF (Activation Code File),or by entering the Activation Code manually.		
Cancel		

3. Enter the activation code issued by your dealer and click "Execution". In order to execute activation with an activation code file, click the folder icon and select the file.

💑 Activation 🛛 🔀		
Activation		
Enter the activation code(16-digits) for the serial number below to execute the activation.		
Serial No.		
Activation Code		
Back execute Cancel		

4. When activation is complete, the following window will appear.

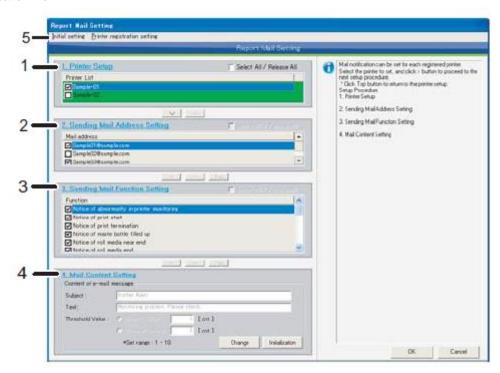
	Activation completion
The a The p	activation has been completed. printer is ready to print.
	Serial No.
	ОК

- If an activation execution error occurs, contact your dealer and provide the "ErrCode".
- Once activation is complete, restart the printer.

# 9. Report Mail

When an error or warning occurs with the printer under monitoring, the notification mail will be sent to the specified mail address.

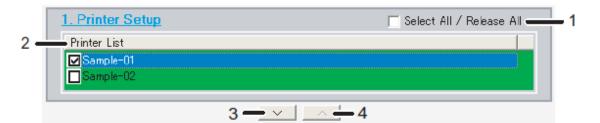
Configure the settings in the order of printer, mail address, functions and mail contents to send the notification mail.



No.	Name	Description
1	Printer Setup	Set the mail notification function of registered printer to "Valid / Invalid" Refer to the "Printer Setup" for details. Refer to the "9.1 Printer Setup" for details.
2	Sending Mail Address Setting	Set the mail address for sending the notification mail to "Valid / Invalid" for each printer. Refer to the "9.2 Sending Mail Address Setting" for details.
3	Sending Mail Function Setting	Set the function to send for each printer and mail address to "Valid / Invalid". Refer to the "9.3 Sending Mail Function Setting" for details.
4	Mail Content Setting	Set the details of mail content to send for each printer Refer to the "9.4 Mail Content Setting" for details.
5	List of Settings	Configure the settings required to use the notification mail function. Refer to the "9.5 List of Settings" for details.

# 9.1. Printer Setup

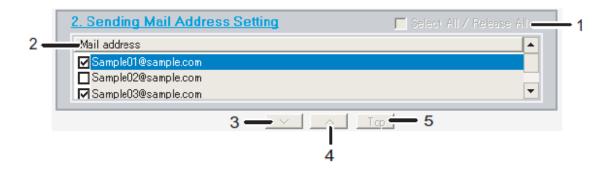
Specify the notification mail function to "Valid / Invalid" for the registered printer.



No.	Name	Description	
1	Select All / Release All	Change the select of all lists.	
2	Printer List	This is the list of registered printers.Check the box for the printer name to setup the notification mail function. Check On : Notification Mail - Valid Check Off : Notification Mail - Invalid	
3	Sending Mail Function Setting	Set the function to send for each printer and mail address to "Valid / Invalid". Refer to the "7.4.4 Smart/C Information" for details.	
4	Next	Select the printer to set, and shift the next step.	
5	Back	Return to the printer setup.	

# 9.2. Sending Mail Address Setting

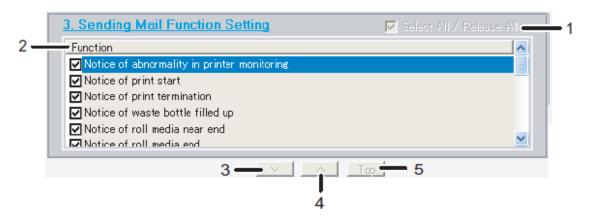
Specify the mail addresses to send the notification mail to "Valid / Invalid" for each printer.



No.	Name	Description
1	Select All / Release All	Change the select of all lists.
2	Mail address	This is the list of registered mail addresses.Check the box for the mail address to setup the notification mail function. Check On : Notification Mail - Valid Check Off : Notification Mail - Invalid
3	Next	Select the mail address to set, and shift to the next step.
4	Back	Return to the sending mail address setting.
5	Return to Top	Return to the printer setup.

# 9.3. Sending Mail Function Setting

Specify the sending functions to "Valid / Invalid" for each printer and mail address.



No.	Name	Description
1	Select All / Release All	Change the select of all lists.
2	Function	This is the list of sending mail functions. Check the box for the mail address to setup the notification mail function. Check On : Notification Mail - Valid Check Off : Notification Mail - Invalid Refer to the "9.3.1 Send Mail Function" for details.
3	Next	Select the functions to set, and shift to the next step.
4	Back	Return to the sending mail function setting.
5	Return to Top	Return to the printer setup.

#### 9.3.1 Send Mail Function

List of sending mail functions

No.	Name	Description
1	Notice of abnormality in printer monitoring	Notification mail will be sent when the printer cannot communicate with MSM by an error.
2	Notice of print start	Notification mail will be sent when the printer started print.
3	Notice of print termination *2	Notification mail will be sent when the printer ended print.
4	Notice of waste bottle filled up *1	Notification mail will be sent when the waste ink bottle is filled up.
5	Notice of roll media near end *2	Notification mail will be sent when the remaining roll media is low. * Only when "Roll Media Length Setting" is specified.
6	Notice of roll media end	Notification mail will be sent when the roll media ends.
7	Notice of remaining ink near end *2	Notification mail will be sent when the remaining ink amount is low.
8	Notice of remaining ink end	Notification mail will be sent when the ink has run out.
9	Notice of Smart/C remaining amount near end *1	Notification mail will be sent when the remaining Smart/C is low.
10	Notice of Smart/C remaining amount end *1	Notification mail will be sent when the Smart/C has run out.
11	Notice of media skew error	Notification mail will be sent when the skew error has been detected.
12	Notice of media cut error *1	Notification mail will be sent when the S/C card error has detected.
13	Notice of S/C card error *1	Notification mail will be sent when the printer part reached to the lifetime.
14	Notice of life time occurrence	Notification mail will be sent when the stock of Smart/C in the MB-Web server is low.
15	Notice of Smart/C stock near end *1	Notification mail will be sent when the stock of Smart/C in the MB-Web server is low.
16	Notice of Smart/C stock end *1	Notification mail will be sent when the stock of Smart/C in the MB-Web server has run out.
17	Notice of firmware update completion	Notification mail will be sent when the update of printer firmware ended.
18	Notice of S/C ink near end *1,2	Notification mail will be sent when the remaining S/C ink amount is low.
19	Notice of S/C ink end *1	Notification mail will be sent when the S/C ink has run out.

## NOTE

\*1 The function is not supported depending on the printer.

\*2 The function might be limited depending on the printer setup. When the function is limited, the notification mail will not be sent.

# 9.4. Mail Content Setting

The contents of mail to send can be changed for each printer.

A. Mail Content Setting     Content of e-mail message						
1 Subject : Printer Al		Printer Alert				
2 -	Text :	Monitoring problem. Please	check.			
3						
		Optional Setting	5 [cnt]			
		*Set range : 1 - 10	4 —	Change	Initialization	5

No.	Name	Description
1	Subject	Change the title of mail to send.
2	Text	Change the content of mail to send. * The following information will be added automatically by the function. * Serial Number of the Printer * Detailed Information (Cartridge Number etc.)
3	Threshold Valuet	Change the threshold value to send e-mail. * This function is not supported in this version.
4	Change	Save the changed contents.
5	Initialization	Initialize the mail content.

NOTE

Make sure to click the "Change" button to change the setting.

The setting will not be reflected without clicking the "Change" button.

#### 9.4.1 Threshold Valuet

Specify the standard threshold value to send e-mail.

The e-mail will be sent when the printer reaches to each threshold value.

The threshold value setting will be available or unavailable depending on the function.



No.	Name	Description
1	Default Value	Specify the value to send the e-mail in the default setting.
2	Default Value	When the default value is selected, the value will be the threshold value to send the e-mail.The default value differs depending on the printer model.
3	Optional Setting	Specify the setting to send the e-mail in the arbitrary setting.
4	Arbitrary Setting Value	When the arbitrary setting is selected, the value will be the threshold value to send the e-mail. The setting value can be input arbitrarily in each setting range. * Refer to the "Table 9.4.1. Threshold Value - Function / Setting Range Chart" for the details.
5	Set range	Setting range that can be specified in the arbitrary setting. * Refer to the "Table 9.4.1. Threshold Value - Function / Setting Range Chart" for the details.

#### Table 9.4.1. Threshold Value - Function / Setting Range Chart

Name		Setting Range		Default Value
		Minimum	Maximum	Delault value
Notice of abnormality in printer monitoring		1 [ cnt ]	10 [ cnt ]	5 [ cnt ]
Notice of roll media near end		1 [ m ]	10 [ m ]	*1
Notice of remaining ink near end		25 [ ml ]	1000 [ ml ]	*1
Notice of Smart/C remaining amount near end	Normal	20 [ ml ]	1000 [ ml ]	*1
	High-capacity	1000 [ ml ]	10% of maximum capacity	*1
Notice of Smart/C stock near end		100 [ ml ]	8000 [ ml ]	1000 [ ml ]

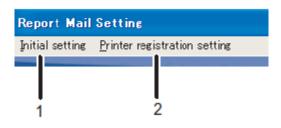
\*1 Differ from the printer model.

NOTE

The control right is required to change the threshold value

# 9.5. List of Settings

Configure the settings needed to use the notification mail function.



No.	Name	Description
1	Initial setting	Perform the initial setting for the MSM. * Refer to "3.Initial Setting" for the details.
2	Printer registration setting	Register the printer to be monitored by MSM. * Refer to "3.9.1 Register the printer information" for the details.

The notification mail will not be sent without the settings above.

# 10. ColorVerify

Printer color reproduction can change over time due to various factors, including environmental (shop temperature and humidity), age and storage conditions of ink and media, possible lot-to-lot manufacturing variations of ink and media, and aging of the printer itself (due to mechanical wear). Individually, such factors may have minimal impact on color reproduction, but cumulatively over a span of time these factors can lead to color variations that become apparent and potentially detrimental to image quality.

The 'Color Verify' feature can be utilized to aid the printer operator in checking for and isolating potential color reproduction variations before they become a visual detriment.

In this function, 14 color patches are printed, and the colors are measure by the optional spectrophotometer (SPECTROVUE VM-10). If the Color Verify was performed before and the measured value was saved as the baseline, the color difference from the baseline will be printedas a result.

## NOTE

- The optional SPECTROVUE VM-10 is required to perform this function.
- Before performing this function, make sure to print the nozzle check pattern to check if there is no missing nozzle.
- In order to perform the Color Verify correctly, make sure to specify the following settings same as the setting when the baseline was saved. If these settings are different, the color difference may become large.

\* Each Heater Temperature Setting, Effect Setting, CR Print Width Setting, Overwrite Setting

- Use this function with the head height adjustment lever is in the "Low" position.
- The 'Color Verify' feature is intended to be utilized as an aid to the printer operator in checking for and isolating potential color reproduction variations that can arise over time due to various factors common to all printing environments; it is a tool intended to help facilitate implementation of on-printer process control.

As such, it is not in-and-of-itself a guarantee of color reproducibility or reproduction accuracy, nor does it negate the need for color workflow best practices.

- Since the room environment (temperature, humidity) may affect the print color, create the environment in accordance with the environment condition described in the operating manual "8.1.1 Printer Specification" "Environment Condition". In addition, make sure to place the media and ink in the printing environment for 2 hours before use.
- In this function, the color difference (dE) is calculated based on CIE 94\*.
  - \* CIE94 is proposed by CIE (International Commission of Illumination) in 1994.
- The Windows firewall for File Transfer Program (ftp.exe) needs to be deactivated to execute this function.

For details, refer to "10.2.15 Windows Firewall".

• The printer model, which was launched after the end of life of VM-10, does not support this function.

# 10.1. History

The history of Color Verify will be displayed.



No.	Name	Description
1	Printer Infomation	The printer information will be displayed. * For details, refer to "10.1.1 Printer Infomation"
2	History List	The list of Color Verify history will be displayed. * For details, refer to "10.1.2 History List".
3	Detail Information	The detail information of Color Verify will be displayed. * For details, refer to "10.1.3 Detail Information".

#### 10.1.1 Printer Infomation

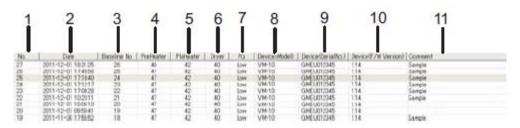
The printer information will be displayed.



No.	Name	Description
1	Printer model	The printer model will be displayed.
2	Printer Seical No.	The serial number of printer will be displayed.
3	User Type	The user type specified for printer will be displayed.
4	Obtain Information	Obtain the latest printer information.
5	Initialization	Initialize the history information.
6	End	Stop the Color Verify.

## 10.1.2 History List

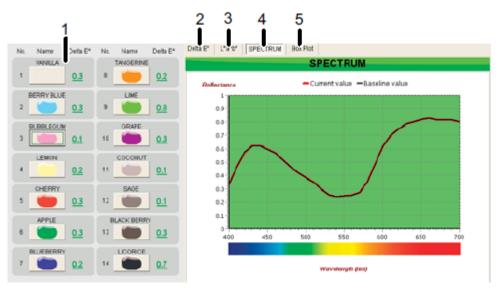
The history of Color Verify will be displayed in the list.



No.	Name	Description
1	No.	The data No. of Color Verify will be displayed.
2	Date	The date when Color Verify was executed will be displayed.
3	Baseline No.	The baseline No. will be displayed. * When the baseline is not specified, "-" will be displayed.
4	PreHeater	The pre heater temperature specified for Color Verify will be displayed.
5	PlaHeater	The platen heater temperature specified for Color Verify will be displayed.
6	Dryer	The dryer temperature specified for Color Verify will be displayed.
7	PG	The head height specified for Color Verify will be displayed.
8	Device(Model)	The name of colorimeter will be displayed.
9	Device(SerialNo.)	The serial number of colorimeter will be displayed.
10	Device(F/W Version)	The F/W version of colorimeter will be displayed.
11	Comment	The comment entered for Color Verify will be displayed.

#### 10.1.3 Detail Information

The detail information of Color Verify will be displayed.



No.	Name	Description
1	Delta E*	The Delta E* information will be displayed. * For details, refer to "10.1.3.1 Delta E*".
2	Delta E* Graph	The Delta E* graph will be displayed. * For details, refer to "10.1.3.2 Delta E* Graph".
3	L*a*b* Graph	The L*a*b* graph will be displayed. * For details, refer to "10.1.3.3 *a*b* Graph".
4	SPECTRUM Graph	The SPECTRUM graph will be displayed. * For details, refer to "10.1.3.4 SPECTRUM Graph".
5	Box Plot	The box plot will be displayed * For details, refer to "10.1.3.5 BoxPlot".

#### 10.1.3.1. Delta E\*

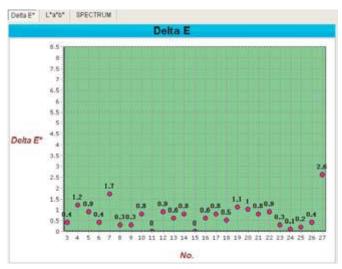
The Delta E\* information of each patch will be displayed.



No.	Name	Description
1	No.	The patch number will be displayed.
2	Patch Name	The patch name will be displayed. In addition, when the patch button is clicked, the patch name will be reflected to each graph and displayed in the graph.
3	Delta E*	The Delta E* information of patches will be displayed.

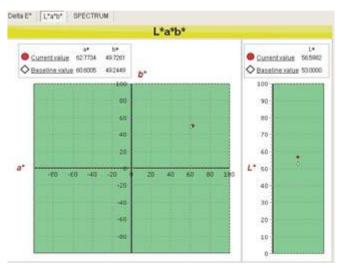
#### 10.1.3.2. Delta E\* Graph

The Delta E\* graph information of 25 times of the latest Color Verify will be displayed.



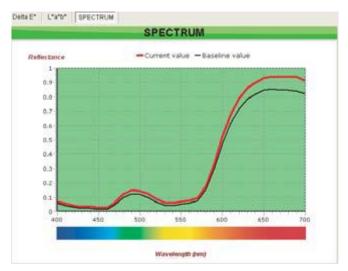
### 10.1.3.3. \*a\*b\* Graph

The  $L^*a^*b^*$  information of selected patch will be displayed.



#### 10.1.3.4. SPECTRUM Graph

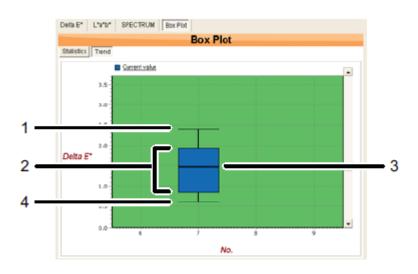
The SPECTRUM information of selected patch will be displayed.



#### 10.1.3.5. BoxPlot

Box plot is a graph to show the distribution of data simply.

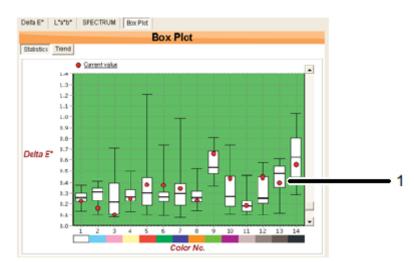
Generally, a box plot has the following features.



No.	Name	Description
1	Maximum	Shows the maximum value of data.
2	Box	Half of the data are distributed in the box range.
3	Medium	Middle value when the data is arranged from smallest to largest.
4	Minimum	Shows the minimum value of data.

#### (1)Statistics

The statistical information of the measured Delta  $\mathsf{E}^*$  value will be displayed by color.



No.	Name	Description
1	Measured Value	The measured value selected in the list will be displayed.

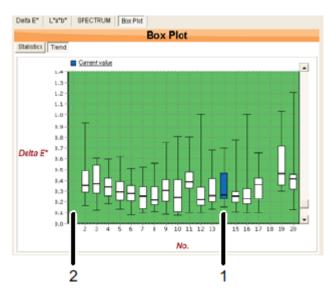
### NOTE

- If the measured value is in the box, the color is stable compared to the colors that are measured in the past.
- If the measured value is higher than the box, the color may be different from before. For the acceptance judgment, refer to the Delta E\* value.
- Even if the measured value is lower than the box, there is no problem because the value is close to the baseline.
- To display the figure, more than 3 times of measurement at the same base line is required.

#### (2)Trend

The distribution of data will be displayed by each measurement.

From the variation in location and size of box, the tendency of color reproductively can be checked.



No.	Name	Description
1	Measured value	The measured value selected in the list will be displayed. The box of selected value will be shown in the different color.
2	Baseline value	The box will not be displayed.

### NOTE

- If the delta E\* values of several colors has increased without big change in the location of box:
   The measurement may be failed due to uneven media and / or dust on the media surface. Please perform the measurement again.
- If the delta E\* value is acceptable but the location of box is high: The printing environment and setting may be different. Or, the media characteristic may be changed (e.g. the media color / dot gain has changed).
- To display the figure, more than 2 times of measurement at the same base line is required.

# 10.2. Color Verify

Execute the Color Verify.

Follow the procedures and check the notes below to perform the Color Verify.

### NOTE

- The optional SPECTROVUE VM-10 is required to perform this function.
- To perform this function, make sure that the remaining amount of ink and media is enough and follow the instructions of operation panel and MSM.
- While the printer is in operation, the Color Verify is not executed. Make sure that "Ready to Print" is displayed on the operation panel.
- The 'Color Verify' feature is intended to be utilized as an aid to the printer operator in checking for and isolating potential color reproduction variations that can arise over time due to various factors common to all printing environments; it is a tool intended to help facilitate implementation of on-printer process control.

As such, it is not in-and-of-itself a guarantee of color reproducibility or reproduction accuracy, nor does it negate the need for color workflow best practices.

#### 10.2.1 Configuration

To execute Color Verify, select a baseline from the history list, and click "Start" button.

If the baseline is not selected, the baseline will be created and the Delta E will not be displayed.

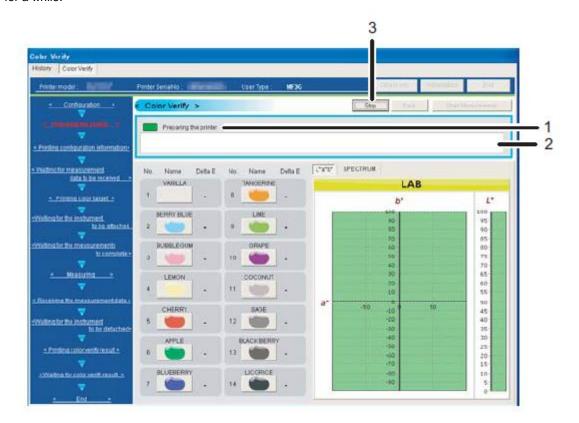
Calar Verily								- 3		
History Color Verify								10 10 100		
Partermodel	Printer	Senatio : (desinatio	User 1	ipe: Typ	e29			Ottain Mo.	Indiatation	Erd
10-10-000 (Contraction of the Contraction of the Co	( • •	configuration >								Dat .
Freparna za poster	*2 th	cute the Color Venty, the baseline trong the hust le baseline is not selected the Cetta E will not be do	the baceline #							
s. Visiting for measurement	No	Date	Boseline No.	Prefleater	Pallester	Dryer 1	PG	Device(Model)	Descettenal	DeviceEMVa
data to be received	3	2011-12-05 083711 2011-12-05 083656	20	47 47	42 42	40 40	Low	VM-10 VM-10	OMEU012345 GMEU012345	114
· moting coordinant -	22	201-12-01 183125 201-12-01 174558	26	40	42	40 40	Low	VM-10 VM-10	OMEU012345 OMEU012345	154
	25	201-12-01 171846 2011-12-01 171247	24	47	42	40	LOW	VM-10	GMEU012345	111
sWelling for the instanted	20	201-12-01 110028	283	47	42	40	Low	VM10	GNEU012345	1.14
12.1.9. #feiteit.	22	- 统1-技-61 166-11	21	47	45	48	LOW	VM-10 VM-50	ONEU012345 GNEU012345	114
and the second se	20	2011-12-01 0R5847 2011-11-30 175552	19	47	42	40 40	LOW.	VM-10 VM-10	04EU012345 04EU012345	1.14
-Wating for the measurements	38	2011-11-30 174352 2011-13-00 174257	17	47	42	48 40	Low	VM-10	ONEU012345 ONEU012345	114
-	15	201-11-30 114132 201-11-30 123725	15	47	42	40	Low	VM-10	GNEU012345	1.14
< Manufactor	11	2011-11-11 11:1954	13	47	8	40	Low	VM-10 VM-10	GNEU012345	114
	13 12	2011-11-11 180706 2011-11-10 1561:21	12	47 47	42	40 40	Low	VM-10 VM-10	ONEU012345 ONEU012345	114
e fieceina ba massammertanta :	31	20(1+11+10 1458/21 20(1+11+10 1424:00		47 47	42	40 40	Love	VM-10 VM-10	GNEU012345 ONEU012345	114
7	9	20(1-11-10 140745 20(1-11-10 140207	8	47	42	40 40	Low	VM-10	OMEU012345 OMEU012345	1.14
Wildoalor the instanted	7.	201-11-10 115048	. 6	47	444	40	Low	VM-10 VM-10	ONEU012345 ONEU012345	114
by by defathed:	6	2011-11-10 1106:50	4	47	42	40 40	Low	VM-10	GNEU012345	114
- Posta concentrate	3	2011-11-10 11:21.6E 2011-11-09 14:00:54	1	47 47	42	40	Low	VM-10 VM-10	OMEU012345 04/EU012345	1.14
	2	201-11-09 115601 201-11-09 154615	1	47	42	40 40	High Lose	VM-10	ONEU012345 ONEU012345	114
*Wallou for color york result. *										

No.	Name	Description
1	Obtain Information	Obtain the latest printer information.
2	End	Stop the Color Verify.
3	Progress of Color Verify	The progress of Color Verify will be displayed. The current progress will be displayed in red letter.
4	History List	The list of Color Verify history will be displayed. To execute Color Verify, select a baseline from the list.
5	Start	Select a baseline, and start Color Verify.

#### 10.2.2 Preparing the printer

The printer is in preparation to execute Color Verify.

When the printer preparation is completed, the printer proceeds to the next step automatically. Please wait for a while.



No.	Name	Description
1	Progress of Color Verify	The progress of Color Verify will be displayed.
2	Detail	The detail information will be displayed according to the progress.
3	History List	Click "Stop" button to stop the Color Verify. When the Color Verify is stopped, the result will not be saved in the history. * For details, refer to "10.2.14 Stop".

NOTE

While the printer is in operation, the Color Verify is not executed.

#### 10.2.3 Printing configuration information

The printer is printing a setup data.

When the printing is completed, the printer proceeds to the next step automatically. Please wait for a while.

#### 10.2.4 Waiting for measurement data to be received

The printer is waiting for patch data to receive.

The patch data will be printed automatically by MSM. Please wait for a while.

#### 10.2.5 Printing color target

The printer is printing a patch data.

When the printing is completed, the printer proceeds to the next step automatically.

Please wait for a while.

#### 10.2.6 Waiting for the instrument to be attached

When the patch data is printed, follow the instructions on operation panel to attach the colorimeter to the printer.

#### 10.2.7 Waiting for the measurements to complete

When the colorimeter is attached to the printer, the printer will be the color measurement waiting status. Press "Enter" key on the operation panel, or click "Start Measurement" button on MSM to start the color measurement.

Frinter model	Printer SertalNo	deserved in	User Type	MF3G		3	General Contraction	6-3
Configuration	Color Ver	1/ >				Ske	Star	Measurements 🕳
• heparing the proter			rements to comple					
Pentina contigunation informations	Page Bridge ka	ron the operation	ion samet or click 🗄	And Measures	ants) button	onme VSM.		
waters for measurement	No. Niene	Datta E	No. Name	Delta E	[L'artr	SPECTRUM		
tata ti bo received	VANEL	Contraction of the	SANCERI				LAB	
- Printers Court Secont -	1	-	n 🥌				<i>b</i> *	L*
National for the instrument	BERRE	LUE	LME		1.1			100
to to effected.	2		•				10	90
	DUDDLE	SUM	ORAPE	2			10	65 80
-	3	1 2.00	10	(45			10	75
Medeuma -	LEVO	¥.	COCONL	n.			10	45
	4		11 .000				10	60
la ceivine the management data.c	CHER	77.	ERADE		<i>a</i> *	-60	10 \$10	90 45
Veliging for the instrument	5		12 1000				14 I	40
to be detected:	APPL		BACKDER	1001			40	35-
-Protossionesta	A CONTRACT	100	13 1000				10	25
	Contraction of the local division of the loc	10.00		1.5			10	20
Ninton Incoments and marks	BLUEBE	RY	LICORIC	E.		3	10	10
	7 💼		14				10	

No.	Name	Description
1	Start Measurements	Start the color measurement.

#### 10.2.8 Measuring

The printer is measuring the patches.

When the color measurement is completed, the printer proceeds to the nest step automatically.

Please wait for a while.

#### 10.2.9 Receiving the instrument to be detached

When the color measurement is completed, the measurement result will be obtained from the printer.

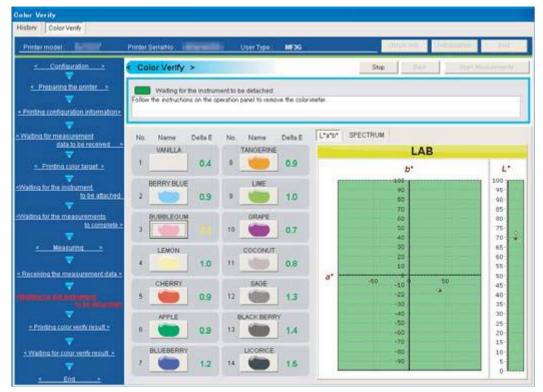
When the measurement result is obtained completely, the printer proceeds to the next step automatically.

Please wait for a while.

#### 10.2.10 Waiting for the instrument to be detached

When the measurement result is obtained from printer, the result will be displayed on MSM.

Follow the instructions on operation panel to remove the colorimeter from the printer.



#### **10.2.11** Printing color verify result

The printer is printing the measurement result of Color Verify.

When the printing of Color Verify result is completed, the printer proceeds to the next step automatically. Please wait for a while.

### 10.2.12 Waiting for color verify result

Check the printed Color Verify result, and press "Enter" key on the operation panel.

Color Verify										
History Color Verify										
Printer model	Printer SerialNo	-		User Type	MF3G	-		Office line	minudo	Ent.
Confeuration >	Color Verify	>					Stop	dia.s	(iiii)	1000222000
Preparing the printer +  Printing configuration informations	Waiting for Check the color me	r color verify sourcement re		d press (Enter	] key on the	operation pa	nel			
• Wating for measurement	No. Name	Delta E	No	Name	Delta E	L*a*b*	SPECTRUM			
data to be received	VANILLA			TANOERINE				LA	В	
<ul> <li>Printma optar target &gt;</li> </ul>	1	0.4	0	-	0.9			<i>b</i> *		L*
•Wating for the instrument.	BERRY BLU			LIME		1		100		100
to be attached	2	0.9	0	-	1.0			80 70		90-05-
«Walling for the measurements to complete -	BUBBLEOU			ORAPE				60		80
-			10	-	0.7			8 4		75-
Measuring	LEMON	1 sears		COCONUT				50		65-60-
- Receiting the measurement data -		1.0	11		0.8			10		55-
	CHERRY	-		SAGE		a	-90	-10	50	50 45
Walling for the instrument to be detected.	5 🔘	0.9	12	9	1.3			-20		40-
CLEAR AND	APPLE			BLACK BERR	ŵ.			4 3		30 - 25 -
- Printing color with result -	0	0.9	12	-	1.4			-60		20
	BLUEBERR	r -		LICORICE				-10		15-
-	7 🔘	1.2	54	-	1.5			190		5
e End e								100		

#### 10.2.13 End

To leave the Color Verify result on the history, enter the comment and click "Save" button. To exit the Color Verify without saving the result, click "End" button.

Click "Save" / "End" button to exit the Color Verify.



No.	Name	Description
1	Save	Click "Save" button to save the Color Verify result to the history. * Enter the comment to save the result.
2	End	Click "End" button to exit the Color Verify without saving the result.
3	Comment	Enter the comment to save the Color Verify result to the history.

#### 10.2.14 Stop

Stop the Color Verify. When the Color Verify is stopped, the result will not be saved in the history.

Finitermodel	Pinter 3	ienatio:	<b>Versel</b>		User Type	10536			24 and 10	(Herandidae	
Confersion	Col	or Verify	>					11000	Back	01 T TR	incidentes (
-Checking to print.	-	Carcelled									
Transport of the second											
Visiting for measurement	No.	Nime	Delta E	No	Name	Dyfta E	1.9.04	SPECTRUM			
data to be received		VARLLA	1		MANOERIN	7			LAI	в	
· rented southages -		_	1	<b>n</b> 2	-	14			<i>b</i> .		L*
Welling for the instrument basis affectives.	3	ERRY BLU			LIME	].			NG 10		95 90
Wating for the measurements to consider-		CER.EOU	1.	10	ORMPE	1.			70 10 10		85 80 75
Masture -		LEMON	_		COCONUT				42 32		70
	4	LEMON	1.	it	COCOND	1.			20		60 55
Receive the measurement date 2	-	CHERRY	_	-	EAGE	CORNER OF CORNER	0-	-50		10	50
o) dealer the instanted his he detectively	5		] -	12		] -			-10 -20 -90		45 40 35
		APPLE	1	1000	KACKBER	RV.			\$ \$		30-

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Return to the setup window.

#### 10.2.15 Windows Firewall

Since the Windows "File Transfer Program (ftp.exe)" is used in the Color Verify function, deactivate the block when a firewall warning is displayed.

Patch data will not be printed until the block is deactivated.



# 11. VSM Mobile

To use an application "VSM Mobile" for handheld terminal such as Smart Phone, the handheld terminal to be used form MSM should be registered, in order to obtain the printer information via MSM.



#### NOTE

- The application "VSM Mobile" for handheld terminal can be downloaded from Android market for free.
- Customer is responsible for the communication fee to connect to Android market.
- The communication between handheld terminal and MSM will require Wi-Fi connection.
- To communicate handheld terminal with MSM, a particular port will be used. If the setting of Windows firewall and security software needs to be changed, please check with your network administrator.

# 11.1. VSM Mobile Setting

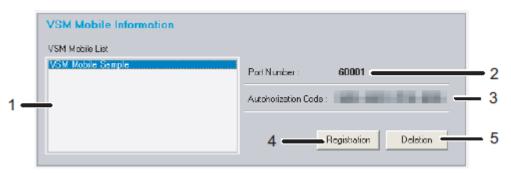
The information of handheld terminal that uses the MSM Mobile can be checked, and the handheld terminal can be registered.

	VSM Mobile Setting	
	VSM Mobile List	
1 -	Processing	
4 —	VSM Mobile Information	
	VSM Mobile List	
	VSM Mabile Sample Port Number : 60001	
	Autohorization Code :	
	Registration Delation	
5 —	VSM Setting Port Number: 60001	
	2 - OK Cancel	- 3

No.	Name	Description
1	Status	The connection status of VSM Mobile will be displayed.
2	ОК	Save the registration information, and exit the VSM Mobile setting.
3	Cancel	Exit the VSM Mobile setting without saving the registration information.
4	VSM Mobile Information	The VSM Mobile can be checked. * For details, refer to "11.1.1 VSM Mobile Information"
5	MSM Setting	Configure the MSM setting needed to link with VSM Mobile. * For details, refer to "11.1.2 MSM Setting"

#### 11.1.1 VSM Mobile Information

The information of VSM Mobile registered on MSM can be checked, and VSM Mobile can be registered / deleted.



No.	Name	Description
1	VSM Mobile List	The VSM Mobile registered on MSM will be displayed.
2	Port Number	The connection port number registered at the VSM Mobile registration will be displayed.
3	Authorization Code	The authorization code registered at the VSM Mobile registration will be displayed.
4	Registration	Press "Registration" button to register new VSM Mobile. * For details, refer to "11.1.1.1 Registration"
5	Deletion	<ul> <li>The registered VSM Mobile can be deleted.Select unnecessary</li> <li>VSM Mobile and delete from the list.</li> <li>* If the VSM Mobile is deleted, the communication with VSM Mobile will be disabled.</li> <li>To make a communication again, the registration will be needed again.</li> </ul>

#### 11.1.1.1. Registration

New VSM Mobile can be registered in MSM.

Follow the procedures below to register new VSM Mobile.

No.	Name	Target Application	Description
(1)	VSM Mobile Synchronization	MSM	MSM is waiting for the synchronization with VSM Mobile.
(2)	Entry / Registration of VSM Mobile Registration Information	VSM Mobile	Enter and register the VSM Mobile information based on the information displayed on MSM.
(3)	Registration of VSM Mobile	MSM	When MSM and VSM Mobile are synchronized normally, the VSM Mobile can be registered in MSM.

### NOTE

• To register the VSM Mobile in MSM, download and install VSM Mobile to your handheld terminal from Android market.

#### (1) VSM Mobile Synchronization

When the "Registration" button is selected, a window to register the VSM Mobile will be displayed. The MSM will be synchronization wait status, and wait for the connection from the VSM Mobile.

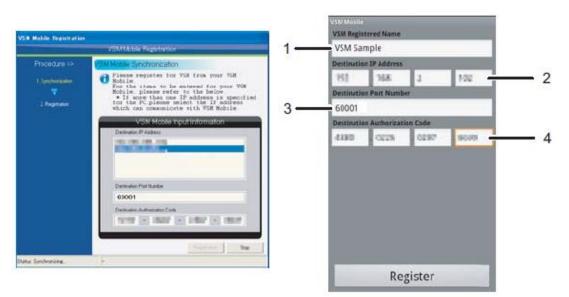
	VSM Mobile Registration
Procedure >>	VSM Mobile Synchronization
1. Synchronization 2. Registration	<ul> <li>Please register for VSM from your VSM Mobile.</li> <li>For the items to be entered for your VSM Mobile, please refer to the below.</li> <li>* If more than one IP address is specified for the PC.please select the IP address which can communicate with VSM Mobile.</li> </ul>
	VSM Mobile Input Information
	Destination IP Address
	100-100-100-100
	Destination Port Number
	60001
	Destination Authorization Code
	1212 - IANY - 1207 - IANY
	Acastroion Stop -

No.	Name	Description
1	Destination IP Address	The IP address list the PC installed with MSM will be displayed. * If several IP addresses are specified in the PC, select the IP address that can communicate with VSM Mobile.
2	Destination Port Number	The port number to be used for the connection of MSM and VSM Mobile will be displayed.
3	Destination Authorization Code	The authorization code will be displayed to identify the VSM Mobile.
4	Stop	The VSM Mobile registration will be stopped.

#### (2) Entry / Registration of VSM Mobile Registration Information

Register the MSM from VSM Mobile, and check the connection with MSM that is waiting for synchronization.

Enter the information based on the VSM Mobile entry information of the MSM.



No.	Name	Description
1	Registered Name for MSM	Enter an arbitrary name of the MSM to register.
2	Destination IP Address	Enter the IP address of the PC installed with MSM. * If several IP addresses are specified in the PC, select the IP address that can communicate with VSM Mobile.
3	Destination Port Number	The port number to be used for the connection of MSM and VSM Mobile will be displayed.
4	Destination Authorization Code	The authorization code will be displayed to identify the VSM Mobile.

### MSM

### VSM Mobile

#### (3) Registration of VSM Mobile

When MSM and VSM Mobile are synchronized normally, the VSM Mobile can be registered in MSM.

VSM Mobile Registration	
	VSM Mobile Registration
Procedure >> 1. Synchronization 2. Registration	VSM Mobile Registration Synchronization between VSM and VSM Mobile complets. To register VSM Mobile on VSM, enter your preferred 'application name' and click 'Register' button. VSM Mobile will be registered on VSM
	VSM Mobile Registration VSM Mobile Name VSM Mobile Sample Destination IP Address
	Destination Port Number 60001
	Destination Authorization Code
Status: Waiting for registration	2 — Registration Stop

No.	Name	Description
1	VSM Mobile Name	Enter an arbitrary name of the VSM Mobile to register.
2	Registration	If there is no same name as entered name, the VSM Mobile can be registered.

#### 11.1.2 MSM Setting

Set up the part to connect MSM with VSM Mobile.

VSM Setting	Port Number :	60001	

No.	Name	Description
1	Port Number	Enter the port number to be used for the connection of MSM and VSM Mobile.

NOTE

- If the port number conflicts with other application, change the port number to anarbitrary number. To change the port number, please check with your network administrator.
- When the port number is changed, please change the port number of VSM Mobile that was registered before the change also.

# **12. Print History**

This function allows MSM to get print history information from printer and monitor the history.

#### Main Function:

\*Access to the print history \*Statistics Information \*Cost Information



No.	Name	Description
1	Setting	Register the cost information or initialize print history. * For details, refer to "12.5 Setting"
2	Printer model	The selected printer model is displayed.
3	Printer Serial No.	The serial number of the selected printer is displayed.
4	Ink Type	Select the ink type from drop-down list registered in "Cost Setting" < "Ink".
5	Printer Information	Get the latest print history from the printer. This feature is available only when the printer is online.
6	Exit	Exit the Print History menu.
7	Search Condition	Set search condition for print history to be displayed in the list. * For details, refer to "12.1 Search Condition"
8	Print History List	Displays the search result of print history. * For details, refer to "12.2 Print History List"
9	Detail Information	Displays the detail information for the specified print history. * For details, refer to "12.3 Detail Information"
10	Statistics Information	Displays print history statistically. * For details, refer to "12.4 Statistics Information"

# 12.1. Search Condition

Refine search result of print history to be displayed.

Printer mo	del: VJ-1948WX	Printer Serial No. :	Ink Type :	Sample		<b>-</b>	Printer Info.	Exit
Search Co	User Type	Type1	- Account		- Print rest	ult C	Ж	· •
🖂 All Chec	k Date	2019/07/01	- 2019/07	/10	Delete	Clear	Search	Export
No.	Date(Start)	Job Name	Account	User Type	Print result	Cost[\$]	Ink[ml]	Area[m2] 🔺
56	2019/06/25 11:10:39	Sample	Sample1	Type2	OK	100.9	0.266	1.997 =
55	2019/06/25 09:33:44	Sample	Sample2	Type2	Cancel	9.1	0.000	0.161
54	2019/06/25 09:19:57	Sample	Sample2	Type2	Cancel	16.2	0.000	0.304
53	2019/06/24 11:18:52	Sample	Sample2	Type2	Cancel	10.5	0.000	0.190
52	2019/06/24 11:04:54	Sample	Sample	Type2	OK	100.9	0.283	1.997
51	2019/06/24 10:54:50	Sample	Sample	Type2	Cancel	20.5	0.000	0.389
50	2019/06/24 10:35:57	Sample	Sample	Type2	Cancel	43.3	0.031	0.845
49	2019/06/24 10:32:00	Sample	Sample	Type2	Cancel	16.2	0.000	0.304
48	2019/06/24 10:32:00	Sample	Sample	Type2	Cancel	16.2	0.000	0.304 -

No.	Name	Description
1	User Type	Check the box and select the user type from the drop-down list.
2	Account	Check the box and select the account from the drop-down list.
3	Print result	Check the box and select print result from: OK : Successfully printed. Cancel : Failed to finish printing.
4	Date	Check the box and specify the time period of printing from the drop-down list.
5	All Check	Check the box to select all print history to be deleted.
6	Search	Display the result to be matched criteria specified.
7	Clear	Clear the search condition and display all print history.
8	Delete	Delete the print history you selected. If you delete the history, you cannot recover the data.
9	Export	Save a list of print history with .csv extension. * For details, refer to "12.8 Export"

# 12.2. Print History List

Displays the list of print history extracted from the printer.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
	l								
No.	Date(Start)	Job Name	Account	User Type	Print result	Cost[\$]	Ink[ml]	Area[m2]	
10	2018/06/19 14:51:56	Sample	Sample1	Type2	OK	10.2	0.232	0.002	
9	2018/06/19 14:41:52	Sample	Sample2	Type2	OK	10.3	0.202	0.004	
8	2018/06/19 14:36:26	Sample	Sample2	Type2	OK	10.3	0.127	0.003	
<b>□</b> 7	2018/06/19 14:28:12	Sample	Sample	Type2	OK	10.4	0.255	0.004	=
6	2018/06/19 14:20:35	Sample	Sample	Type2	OK	10.5	0.584	0.004	
5	2018/06/19 14:08:27	Sample	Sample	Type2	OK	10.5	0.517	0.004	
4	2018/06/19 15:39:45	Sample	Sample	Type2	OK	10.3	0.415	0.002	
3	2018/06/19 15:31:51	Sample	Sample	Type2	OK	10.2	0.231	0.002	
2	2018/06/19 15:25:03	Sample	Sample	Type2	OK	10.1	0.125	0.001	-

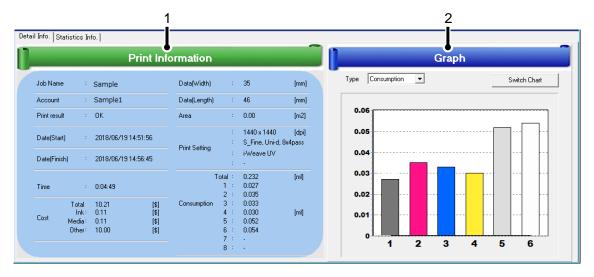
No.	Name	Description
1	No.	Displays the order of data in the list.
2	Daate(Start)	Displays print starting date and time.
3	Job Name	Displays job name. If the data does not contain its job name, it will not be displayed.
4	Account	Displays account. If the data does not contain account information, it will not be displayed.
5	User Type	Displays user type.
6	Print result	Displays print result from: OK : Successfully printed. Cancel : Failed to finish printing.
7	Cost	Displays expenses incurred in printings, if the cost information is registered.
8	lnk *1	Displays the ink consumption amount.
9	Area	Displays the area of printing.



 \*1 Ink consumption may vary depending on the print mode setting or other printing conditions even if printing the same image.

# 12.3. Detail Information

Displays detail information for the specified print history in data and graph format.



No.	Name	Description
1	Print Information	Displays the detail information for the specified print history.
2	Graph	Displays either of detail information in graph form: 1. Consumption 2. Cost

#### 12.3.1 Print Information

Displays detail information for the specified print history.



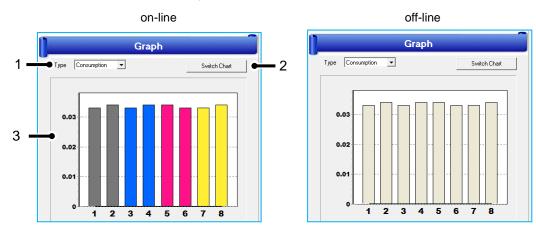
No.	Name	Description
1	Job Name	Displays the job name. If the data does not contain the job name, it will not be displayed.
2	Account	Displays the account. If the data does not contain the account information, it will not be displayed.
3	Print result	Displays the print result from: OK : Successfully printed. Cancel : Failed to finish printing.
4	Date(Start)	Displays the print starting date and time.
5	Date(Finish)	Displays the print completion date and time.
6	Time	Displays the total printing time.
7	Cost	Displays the expense incurred in the printing, if the cost information for the print job is registered.
8	Data(Width)	Displays the width of printing.
9	Data(Length)	Displays the length of printing.
10	Area	Displays the area of printing.
11	Print Setting	Displays the print setting below. 1. Printing Resolution 2. Print Quality 3. Direction 4. Pass 5. Effect
12	Consumption *1	Displays the ink consumption amount.

NOTE

 \*1 Ink consumption may vary depending on the print mode setting or other printing conditions even if printing the same image.

#### 12.3.2 Graph

Display print information in two types of graph form.



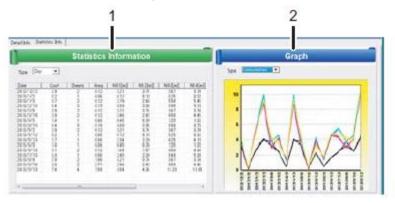
No.	Name	Description
1	Туре	Choose the information type to be displayed in graph form from: 1. Consumption 2. Cost
2	Switch Chart	Switch the chart type from: 1. Bar Chart 2. Pie Chart
3	Graph	Displays the specified information in graph form.

### NOTE

\*1 If the printer is offline, MSM is unable to obtain the ink color information from the printer. In such cases, the chart will be displayed with random colors chosen by default.

## 12.4. Statistics Information

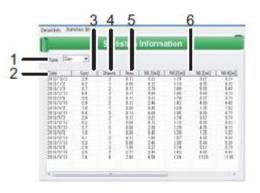
Displays print history statistically in data and graph format.



No.	Name	Description
1	Statistics Information	Displays print history statistically.
2	Graph	Displays the statistics information from below in graph form: 1. Cost 2. Sheets 3. Area 4. Consumption

#### 12.4.1 Statistics Information

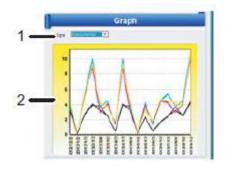
Display statistics print history information by specified time period.



No.	Name	Description
1	Туре	Choose the time period to be displayed from: 1. Day 2. Month 3. Year
2	Date	Displays the specified time period. e.g.) 1. In case of Month, it displays YYYY/MM.=>2013/9, 2013/8 2. In case of Day, it displays YYYY/MM/DD.=>2013/9/12, 2013/9/10, 2013/9/08
3	Cost	Displays expenses incurred in printings.
4	Sheets	Displays the number of printed sheets.
5	Area	Displays the total area of printings.
6	Consumption	Displays the ink consumption amount per slot.

#### 12.4.2 Graph

Display statistic information from Cost/ Sheets/ Area/ Consumption in graph form.



No.	Name	Description
1	Туре	Choose the information type for the graph from: 1. Cost 2. Sheets 3. Area 4. Consumption
2	Graph	Displays the specified information in graph form.

# 12.5. Setting

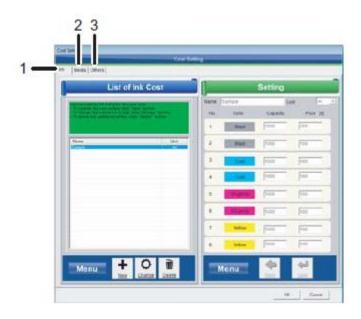
This menu registers cost information or initializes print history.

	Print Histo	ory								
	Setting									
1	Cost	Setting UF	Printer Serial No. :	Ink Type :	Sample		-	Printer Info.	Exit	
2 -	🗕 🖌 Initia	alization								
-	Search (	User Type	Type1	Account		🖃 📃 Print	result OK		-	
	I All Che	Date	7/ 1/2018	- 7/ 8/20	8	<b>_</b>	Delete	Clear	Search	
	No.	Date(Start)	Job Name	Account	User Type	Print result	Cost[\$]	Ink[ml]	Area[m2]	T
	10	2018/06/19 14:51:56	Sample	Sample1	Type2	OK	10.2	0.232	0.002	
	9	2018/06/19 14:41:52	Sample	Sample2	Type2	OK	10.3	0.202	0.004	
		2018/06/19 14:36:26	Sample	Sample2	Type2	OK	10.3	0.127	0.003	
		2018/06/10 14-29-12	Sample	Sample	Type?	OK	10.4	0.255	0.004	

No.	Name	Description
1	Cost Setting	Register cost information to be spent for the printing. * For details, refer to "12.6 Cost Setting"
2	Initialization	Initialize print history. * For details, refer to "12.7 Initialization"

# 12.6. Cost Setting

To calculate cost per print, registers cost information to be spent for printings.



No.	Name	Description
1	Ink	Register ink cost information.
2	Media	Register media cost information.
3	Other	Register other expenses for printings.

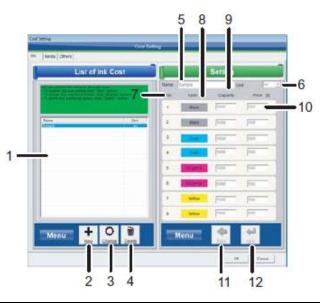
NOTE

• Since the cost calculated here will be approximate cost, use this calculation as a guide.

#### 12.6.1 Ink

Register unit price for each ink.

Ink cost per print can be calculated based on the ink consumption amount and registered unit price.

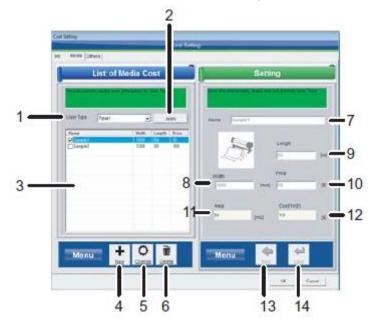


No.	Name	Description
1	Ink cost list	Displays the list of registered ink cost.
2	New button	Register a new ink setting.
3	Change button	Change the current settings.
4	Delete button	Delete the registered settings.
5	Name	Enter the ink name to register. *Enter up to 40 characters. *Cannot be saved with the same name.
6	Unit	Select ink capacity unit from: *Eml / Ecc
7	No.	Displays ink slot numbers in your printer.
8	Color	Displays ink color set in your printer. *Order of ink color to be displayed varies depending on your ink setting. *MSM is unable to obtain the ink color information if the printer is offline. In such cases, "Custom Color" will be displayed in this filed.
9	Capacity	Enter the ink capacity.
10	Price	Enter the ink unit price.
11	Back button	Return to the "Ink Cost List" menu.
12	Save button	Save the setting.

#### 12.6.2 Media

Register unit price for each media.

Media cost per print can be calculated based on the area of printings.

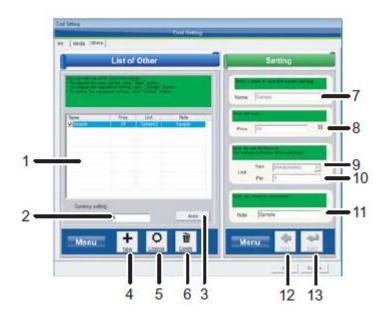


No.	Name	Description
1	User Type	Select user type. To apply registered media cost, check the box of cost information from the list. *Select one cost information at a time.
2	Apply button	Apply the checked media cost information to the specified user type.
3	Registered media list	Displays the list of registered media cost.
4	New button	Register a new media setting.
5	Change button	Change the current settings.
6	Delete button	Delete the registered settings.
7	Name	Enter the media name to register. *Enter up to 40 characters. *Cannot be saved with the same name.
8	Width	Enter the width of media. Unit: mm
9	Length	Enter the length of media. Unit: m
10	Price	Enter the media unit price.
11	Area	Displays the area of media calculated from the media size you entered.
12	Cost	Displays cost per square meter calculated from the unit price.
13	Back button	Return to the "Media Cost List" menu.
14	Save button	Save the setting.

### 12.6.3 Other

Register other expense incurred in printing.

Other cost per print can be calculated based on the cost information registered here.



No.	Name	Description
1	Other cost list	Displays the list of registered other cost. To apply the cost to cost calculation, check the box of cost information. *Multiple selections are acceptable.
2	Currency setting	Set the currency unit (Optional field).
3	Apply button	Apply the checked other cost information.
4	New button	Register a new cost setting.
5	Change button	Change the current settings.
6	Delete button	Delete the registered settings.
7	Name	Enter the name of cost information to register. *Enter up to 40 characters. *Cannot be saved with the same name.
8	Price	Enter the cost.
9	Unit(Type)	Select the unit type for the cost from: - Sheet (number of sheets) - m2 (area) - m (length) The cost will be calculated by the selected unit type.
10	Unit(Per)	Enter a unit of quantity for the unit type. The cost will be calculated by the specified unit of quantity.
11	Note	Add notes (Optional).
12	Back button	Return to the "Other Cost List" menu.
13	Save button	Save the setting.

# 12.7. Initialization

Initialize print history. Once initialized, all the print history and registered cost information will be deleted.

# 12.8. Export

Save the listed print history to a csv file. There are two ways to save.

	Print History(Export settings)
1 <b>—</b> 2 <b>—</b>	Printer Model : XPJ-461UF Printer Serial No. : J 3U
3 —	Delimiter Settings Delimiter Semicolon  Decimal point Comma
4 —	C Manual Export
	Export File Setting]     C:\Sample\0000xxxxx.csv
	OK Cancel • - 5

No.	Name	Description
1	Printer model	Displays the selected printer model.
2	Printer Serial No.	Displays the printer serial number.
3	Delimiter Settings *1	Select the setting for each delimiter. Delimiter : Tab / Semicolon / <comma> Decimal point : Comma / <period></period></comma>
4	Export Settings	Select the export type. Manual / Auto
5	ОК	Select to export your settings.
6	Cancel	Select to cancel the setting.

# NOTE

• \*1 Decimal point is fixed to "period" if delimiter is "comma".

### 12.8.1 Manual

Specify the export destination and export manually.

Export Settings	
<ul> <li>Auto</li> <li>[Export File Setting]</li> <li>C:\Sample\0000xxxxxx.csv</li> </ul>	Export 1 Browse Folders

No.	Name	Description
1	Export	Specify the export destination and export manually.

### 12.8.2 Auto

Specify the export destination in advance and export it automatically when the printer information is acquired.

	Export Settings	
	C Manual	
		Export
	Auto	Browse Folders
2 -	<ul> <li>[Export File Setting]</li> <li>C:\Sample\0000xxxxxx.csv</li> </ul>	

No.	Name	Description	
1	Browse Folders	Specify the export destination.	
2	Export File Setting	Displays the set export destination.	

12-17

# 13. Remote Panel

This function allows you to check the current panel setting in your printer and perform test pattern printing. The available function varies depending on the printer you use.

# 13.1. VJ-628/628X/628MP/XPJ-C641SR-P

## 13.1.1 Remote Panel

Check the printer information and the remote panel status.



No.	Name	Description	
1	Printer model	The selected printer model is displayed.	
2	Printer Serial No.	The serial number of selected printer is displayed.	
3	Status	The remote panel status is displayed.	
4	Remote Panel Mode(Status)	Displays current remote panel mode from: Remote Panel Mode On Remote Panel Mode Off	
5	Remote Panel Mode Button	Enable/Disable remote panel mode.	
6	Update	Change the printer settings.	
7	Printer Information button	Get current panel setting information from your printer. *Printer information of the selected tab is obtained.	
8	Exit button	Exit the Remote Panel menu.	

### 13.1.2 Printer Status

Displays the printer status and remotely operate the printer.

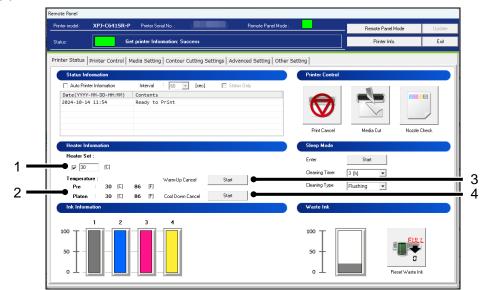


No.	Name	Description
1	Status Information	The current printer status is displayed. If the printer encounters a system error, a workaround will be displayed.
2	Heater Information	Check and change the heater temperature. * The Heater Set temperature is reflected from: Media Setting tab > Media Type > Media Setting > Heater. When the printer is warming up, you can cancel the warm-up and start printing.
3	Ink Information	The remaining ink amount of the printer is displayed. For the details of S/C card recovery, see 7.7.2 S/C Card Recovery.
4	Printer Control	Remotely perform the following operations: • Print Cancel • Media Cut • Nozzle Check
5	Sleep Mode	Remotely switch the printer to Sleep Mode.
6	Waste Ink	The amount in the waste ink tank is displayed. The waste ink counter can be reset.
7	Auto Printer Information	Check this box to automatically get printer information. On : Enable Off : Disable *This function is not available when MSM is launched from the Windows printer driver.
8	Interval	When "Auto Printer Information" is ON, set a time interval to get the latest information from the printer. Value can be set from: <60[sec]> / 30[ sec] / 10[ sec] / 3[ sec]
9	Status Only	Check this box to obtain the printer status information only to minimize the data acquisition time. *This check box is enabled when "Auto Printer Information" is set to ON.

### 13.1.2.1. Heater Information

Check and change the heater temperature.

(1) XPJ-C641SR-P



No.	Name	Description	
1	Heater : Heater Set	Check and change the heater temperature for the media.	
2	Heater : Temperature	The actual temperature of each heater will be displayed.	
3	Warm-Up Cancel	When the printer is warming up, you can cancel the warm-up and start printing.	
4	Cool Down Cancel	When the printer is cool down, you can cancel the cool down and start cutting.	

### (2) VJ-628/628X/628MP



No.	Name	Description	
1	Heater : Heater Set	Check and change the heater temperature for the media.	
2	Heater : Temperature	The actual temperature of each heater will be displayed.	
3	Blower : Auto Off *1	Set the auto power-off to the blower heater. Setting : On / <off></off>	
4	Warm-Up Cancel	When the printer is warming up, you can cancel the warm-up and start printing.	

NOTE

• \*1 This function is available for VJ-628MP.

#### 13.1.2.2. Sleep Mode

Remotely switch the printer to Sleep Mode.

inter model : Printer Serial No     atus : Get printer Information: Success   Printer Control   Media Setting   Advanced Setting     Status Information   Printer Control   Auto Printer Information   Printer Control   Auto Printer Information   Printer Control   Media Cut   Print Cancel   Heater Set:   v 2   v 2   icit   Print :   30   Cl   Status Information   Print Cancel   Heater Set:   v 2   v 2   icit   Print :   30   Cl   Status Information   100   1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   100   1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   100   1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   100   101   102   103   104   105   105   105   105   105   105   105   105   105   105   105   105   105   105   105	note Panel			
Iter Status       Printer Control       Media Setting         Status Information       Interval       Igo (sec)         Auto Printer Mormation       Interval       Igo (sec)         Description       Interval       Interval         Printer Control       Interval       Interval         Description       Interval       Interval         Printer Control       Interval       Interval	inter model : Printer Serial No Remote Panel Mo	ode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status Information       Print Control         Auto Printer Information       Interval : [0] (sec]         DeterVYYY-MME-DP-HHMM0       Contents         2015-08-17 0943       In sleep mode         Heater Information       In sleep mode         Heater Set:       Image: I	atus : Get printer Information: Success		Printer Info.	Exit
Status Information       Interval       Image: Sec.         Determine Information       Interval       Image: Sec.         Determine Information       Interval       Image: Sec.         Heater Information       Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.         Heater Information       Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.         Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.         Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.         Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.         Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.       Image: Sec.	nter Status Ristor Control Modio Sotting Advanced Sotting			
Auto Printer Information       Interval : [0] (sec)         Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HHAMM)       Contents         2015-08-17 0943       In sleep mode         Heater Information       Print Cancel         Heater Set:       Image: Stop Mode         Image: Print Cancel       Stop Mode         Print Cancel       Nazile Check         Heater Set:       Image: Stop Mode         Image: Print Cancel       Stop Mode         Print Cancel       Nazile Check         Heater Set:       Image: Stop Mode         Image: Print Cancel       Nazile Check         Heater Set:       Image: Stop Mode         Image: Print Cancel       Nazile Check         Heater Set:       Image: Stop Mode         Image: Print Cancel       Nazile Check         Heater Set:       Image: Stop Mode         Image: Print Cancel       Nazile Check         Maintormation       Image: Stop Mode         Image: Stop Piller       Image: Stop Piller				
Date(YYYY-M4-DD-HHMM)       Contents         2015-09-17 0843       In sleep mode         Heater finformation       Print Cancel         Heater Set:       Image: Content state stat		Printer Control		
2015-00-17 0949       In steep mode         2015-00-17 0949       In steep mode         Media Cut         Heater fait         Image: Colspan="2">Image: Colspan="2">Steep Mode         Temperature:         Print:       30 [C]       86 [F]       Warm-Up Cancel         Mater Steep Mode         Enter       Steep Mode         Classing Timer       24 [h]         Print:       30 [C]       86 [F]       Warm-Up Cancel         Mater Steep Mode         Enter       Steep Mode         Classing Timer       24 [h]       Classing Timer         Not the top mater Steep Mode         Print:       24 [h]       Classing Timer         Print:       24 [h]       Classing Timer       24 [h]       Classing Timer         Not the top mater Steep Mode         Print:       24 [h]       Classing Timer       24 [h]       Classing Timer         Not the top mater Steep Mode         Not the top mater Steep Mode         Print:       24 [h]       Classing Timer         Steep Mode       Steep M				
Heater Information         Sleep Mode           Heater Set:         Image: Sleep Mode         Enter         Sleep Mode           Temperature:         Image: Sleep Mode         Enter         Sleep Mode           Pre:         32 (C)         89 (F)         Image: Sleep Mode         Enter         Cleaning Timer         24 (h)         Image: Sleep Mode           Pre:         32 (C)         85 (F)         Image: Sleep Mode         Image: Sleep Mode <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>				
Heater Information         Sleep Mode           Heater Set:         Image: Sleep Mode         Enter         Sleep Mode           Temperature:         Image: Sleep Mode         Enter         Sleep Mode           Pre:         32 (C)         89 (F)         Image: Sleep Mode         Enter         Cleaning Timer         24 (h)         Image: Sleep Mode           Pre:         32 (C)         85 (F)         Image: Sleep Mode         Image: Sleep Mode <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>				
Heater Set:         \$\vec{v}\$ 42\$       [C]         Temperature:         Pre       : 32       [C]       89       [F]         Paten       : 30       [C]       86       [F]       Warm-Up Cancel         Ink Information         User in the information         100         1       2       3       4       5       6       7       8         100       1       2       3       4       5       6       7       8         50       - <t< td=""><td></td><td>Print Cancel</td><td>Media Cut Noz</td><td>zle Check</td></t<>		Print Cancel	Media Cut Noz	zle Check
Heater Set:         \$\vec{v}\$ 42 \cdots\$       Clossing Time: 24 (h) \$\vec{v}\$         Temperature:         Pre       30 (Clossing F)         Paten       So (Clossing Time: 24 (h) \$\vec{v}\$         Intermation       Warm-Up Cancel         Warm-Up Cancel         Inter Stop         Cleaning Time: 24 (h) \$\vec{v}\$         User Intermation         Warm-Up Cancel         Warm-Up Cancel         Inter Stop         Cleaning Time: 24 (h) \$\vec{v}\$         User Intermation         Waste Intermation         So + 1	Vester Information	Sleep Mode		
Image: Prediction of the image: Predicti			Stop	
Temperature:         32         [C]         89         [F]         Image: Constraint of the state of the s	☑ 42 [C]			
Plate     32     K-3     85     F)     Warm-Up Cancel     Auto Timer     3     hit       Ink information     1     2     3     4     5     6     7     8       100     1     2     3     4     5     6     7     8       50     -     -     -     -     -     -     -     -	Temperature :	-		
100 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1				
			3 [h]	
	Ink Information	waste lnk		
50				
		100 T		18.1
	50 +	50 -		
				0
	◦	uL و	Reset Was	te Ink

No.	Name	Description
1	Enter *2	Enter/Wake up from Sleep Mode.
2	Cleaning Timer *3	Set the cleaning timer during Sleep Mode. Setting : VJ-628: < Off > / 1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 [h] VJ-628X: Off / 1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 [h] > XPJ-C641SR-P: *5 Off / 1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 [h]
3	Cleaning Type *4	Set the cleaning Type during Sleep Mode. Setting : short / < Normal > / Long / < Flushing >
4	Auto Timer *1,3	Set the timer to automatically enter to Sleep Mode while in Standby Mode. Setting : 1/2/<3>/4/5/6[h]

<> Default setting

NOTE

- \*1 The Auto Timer setting is enabled when the ink set of VJ-628X contains white ink.
- \*2 In VJ-628MP, daily maintenance is required before entering to Sleep Mode. By pressing [Enter], the Daily Maintenance wizard appears.
- \*3 The Cleaning Timer setting is not available for VJ-628MP.
- \*4 The Cleaning Timer setting is available for XPJ-C641SR-P.
- \*5 The default setting varies depending on the cleaning type.

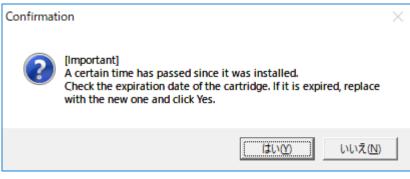
#### 13.1.2.3. Clear printer status

A particular printer status can be cleared.

Follow the instructions on the message box to clear the status.

### [Status that can be cleared]

Check ink expiration date



Check ink color (Smart Chip Recovery)

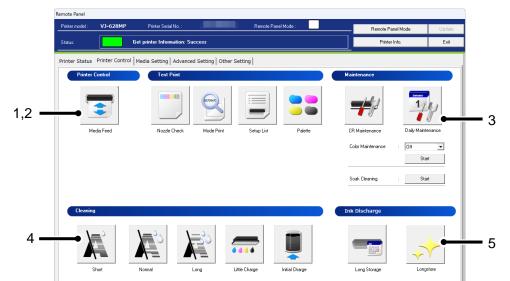
Confirmat	ion	$\times$
?	<ul> <li>[Important]</li> <li>An ink cartridge error such as broken smart chip may have occurred.</li> <li>Check that the color of the ink cartridge installed is correct and click Yes.</li> <li>Smart chip recovery will begin to be able to print properly.</li> <li>No.: 1</li> <li>[Caution]</li> <li>Before performing smart chip recovery, make sure to check the ink color match in order to avoid color mixing.</li> <li>During the smart chip recovery process, the number of the cartridge that the recovery is being performed appears in yellow.</li> </ul>	
	[はい <u>()</u> いいえ( <u>N</u> )	

### NOTE

- If the previous version of F/W is installed, the settings may not be properly reflected. Make sure to install the latest F/W.
- Read the message displayed and clear the status.

### 13.1.3 Printer Control

Remotely operate the printer.



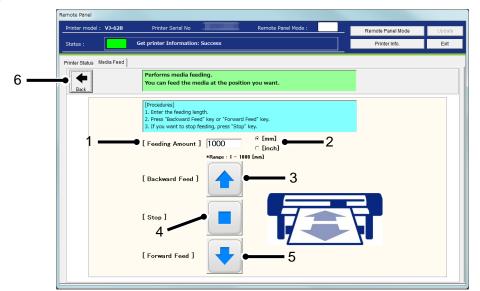
No.	Name	Description
1	Printer Control	Remotely operate the printer.
2	Test Print	Perform the test print selected from this menu.
3	Maintenance	Perform the maintenance selected from this menu.
4	Cleaning	Perform the cleaning selected from this menu.
5	Ink Discharge	Perform the ink discharge selected from this menu.

#### 13.1.3.1. Printer Control

Remotely operate the printer.

### (1) Media Feed

Specify the feeding amount of media set in the printer and feed it in forward/ backward with the specified amount.



No.	Name	Description	
1	Feeding Amount	Specify the media feeding amount range between: • In [mm] setting: 1 ~ < 1000 mm > (in increments of 1 mm) • In [inch] setting: 0.04 ~ < 39.37 inch > (in increments of 0.01 inch)	
	Unit of Feeding Amount	Select the unit of feeding amount from: <mm> or inch</mm>	
3	Backward Feed	Feed the media backward with the specified amount.	
4	Stop	Stop the media feeding.	
5	Forward Feed	Feed the media forward with the specified amount.	
6	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.	

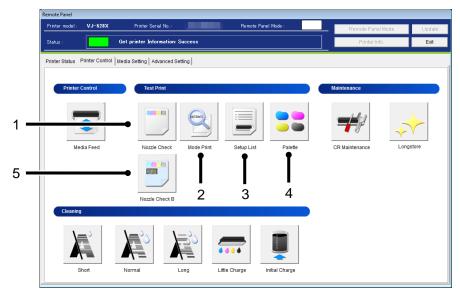
<> Default setting

NOTE

• The printer will feed the media according to the setting you specified. Make sure to specify the appropriate amount to prevent unwinding.

### 13.1.3.2. Test Print

Perform the test print selected from the menu.



No.	Name	Description	
1	Nozzle Check	Print the nozzle check pattern.	
2	Mode Print	Print the printing conditions.	
3	Setup List	Print the current printer setup list.	
4	Palette	Print the palette pattern. *In some print modes, this menu is not available.	
5	Nozzle Check B *1 Nozzle Check F *2	Print the nozzle check B pattern. Print the nozzle check F pattern.	

# NOTE

- \*1 The nozzle check B pattern is available when the ink set of VJ-628X/628MP contains white ink.
- \*2 This function is available for XPJC641SR-P.

### 13.1.3.3. Maintenance

Remotely perform printer maintenances.

rinter model : N	/J-628MP	Printer Serial No. :		Remote P	anel Mode :			11.11	
						Remote Par		Update	
tatus:	Get	printer Information:	Success			Printer I	nfo.	Exit	
inter Status Pr	inter Control Me	dia Setting Advar	nced Setting   Othe	er Setting					
Printer Con	trol	Test Print				Maintenance			
			272017				1	· ·	<b>—</b> 1
Media	Feed	Nozzle Check	Mode Print	Setup List	Palette	CR Maintenance	Daily Mainte	enance	
						Color Maintenance	: Off Star		<b>—</b> 3
						Soak Cleaning	: Star	n	<b>—</b> 5
Cleaning						Ink Discharge			
Shot			Long	Little Charge	Initial Charge	Long Storage	Longs	store	

No.	Name	Description
1	CR Maintenance	Remotely perform CR Maintenances.
2	Daily Maintenance *1	Remotely perform Daily Maintenances.
3	Color Maintenance *1	Set the color maintenance. Setting : On / < Off >
4	Color Maintenance Start *1	Perform color maintenance.
5	Soak Cleaning *1	Perform soak cleaning.

## NOTE

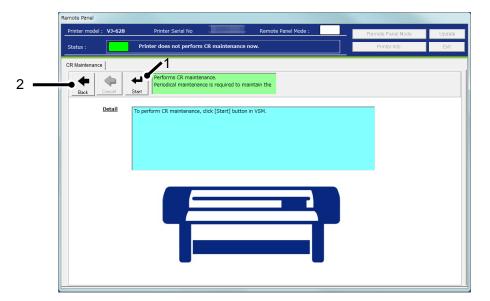
• \*1 This function is available for VJ-628MP.

### (1)CR Maintenance

### 1) VJ-628 / 628X

1-1) Check Printer Status

Before performing CR maintenance, check the printer status.



No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Instruct the printer to perform CR Maintenance.
2	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

Maintenance is being performed in the printer.

After maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.

1-2) Waiting to press [Operation] button in printer.

Before performing CR maintenance, press Operation key on the printer panel and then start CR maintenance.



No.	Name	Description
1	Cancel	Cancel to perform CR maintenance.



Before starting CR maintenance, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

1-3) Performing CR maintenance

CR maintenance is being performed in the printer.

After CR maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.

Remote Panel			
Printer model : VJ-628	Printer Serial No Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	U
Status :	Performing CR maintenance.	Printer Info.	
CR Maintenance			
Back Cancel	Performs CR maintenance. Periodical maintenance is required to maintain the		
Detail	Operating time:20[sec]		
	After CR maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.		
2			
	-		

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
2	Detail	CR maintenance elapsed time is displayed.



After CR maintenance is completed, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

### 2) VJ-628MP

2-1) Check Printer Status

Before performing CR maintenance, check the printer status.



No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Instruct the printer to perform CR Maintenance.
2	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

Maintenance is being performed in the printer.

After maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.

2-2) Waiting to press [Operation] button in printer.

Before performing CR maintenance, press Operation key on the printer panel and then start CR maintenance.

	Remote Panel							
	Printer model :	VJ-628MP	Printer Serial No. :		Remote Panel Mode :		Remote Panel Mode	Update
	Status:		Waiting to press [Operatio	n] button in printer.			Printer Info.	Exit
	Maintenance							
1	• 🔶	Cancel Sta	Periodical maintena printer performancent	ance is required to n e.	aintain the			
		Detail If	ess (Operation) button in you want to cancel maint	the printer to perfo	m daily maintenance. [] button in VSM.	7		

N	lo.	Name	Description
	1	Cancel	Cancel to perform CR maintenance.

# NOTE

• Before starting CR maintenance, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

2-3) Performing CR maintenance

Maintenance is being performed in the printer.

After maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.

	Remote Panel			
	Printer model : VJ-62	MP Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
	Status:	Performing maintenance.	Printer Info.	Exit
	Maintenance			
	Back Cancel	Stat		
	<u>Detail</u>	Time left:257[sec]		
2		After maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel. [Note] [Note] Make curve to perform Maintenance within 5 minutes		
		Make sure to perform Maintenance within 5 minutes. Maintenance session will expire in 5 minutes.		
		•		

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
2	Detail	CR maintenance elapsed time is displayed.

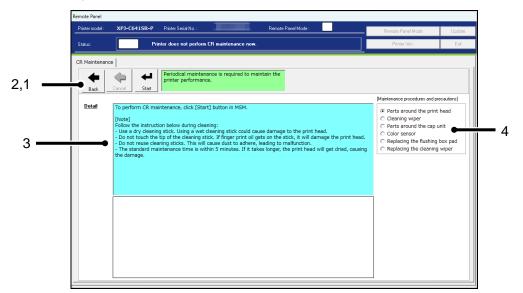
# NOTE

- After CR maintenance is completed, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.
- Since your session will expire in 5 minutes, perform CR maintenance within 5 minutes.
   If your session has expired, finish CR maintenance.

### 3) XPJ-C641SR-P

3-1) Check Printer Status

Before performing CR maintenance, check the printer status.



No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Instruct the printer to perform CR Maintenance.
2	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
3	Detail	Displays notes for each maintenance.
4	Maintenance procedures and precautions	Select the type of maintenance. Displays procedures and notes for the selected maintenance.

3-2) Waiting to press [Operation] button in printer.

Before performing CR maintenance, press Operation key on the printer panel and then start CR maintenance.

Printer model :	XPJ-C641SR-P	Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Updat
Status:	w	aiting to press [Operation] button in printer.	Printer Info.	Exit
CR Maintenanc	xe ]			
	← ←	Periodical maintenance is required to maintain the printer performance.		
Back	Cancel Start		[Maintenance procedures and pre	ecautions]
Detail	Press [Operation] If you want to can	button in the printer to perform CR maintenance. cel CR maintenance, dick [Cance] button in MSM.	Parts around the print     Cleaning wiper     Parts around the cap u     Color sensor     C Replacing the flushing     C Replacing the flushing     C Replacing the cleaning	nit box pad
		Press Pr		

No.	Name	Description
1	Cancel	Cancel to perform CR maintenance.

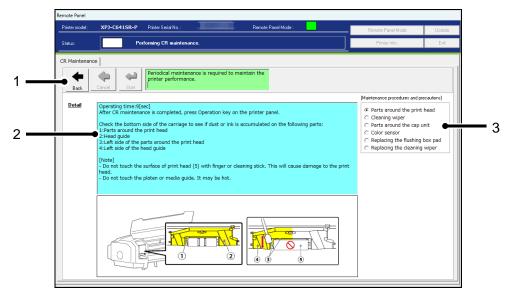


Before starting CR maintenance, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

3-3) Performing CR maintenance

CR maintenance is being performed in the printer.

After CR maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
2	Detail	CR maintenance elapsed time is displayed and various maintenance methods.
3	Maintenance procedures and precautions	Select the type of maintenance. Displays procedures and notes for the selected maintenance.

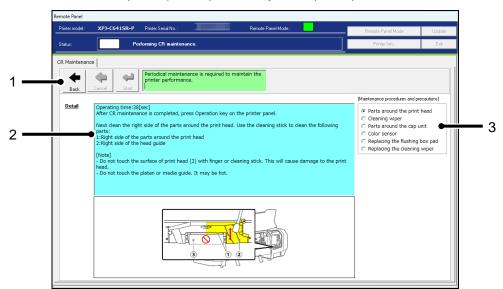
# NOTE

• After CR maintenance is completed, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

#### 3-4) Performing CR maintenance

Next CR maintenance is being executed on the origin side.

After CR maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
2	Detail	CR maintenance elapsed time is displayed.
3	Maintenance procedures and precautions	Select the type of maintenance. Displays procedures and notes for the selected maintenance.

### NOTE

• After CR maintenance is completed, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

### (2) Daily Maintenance

### 1) Check Printer Status

Before performing Daily maintenance, check the printer status.



No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Instruct the printer to perform Daily Maintenance.
2	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

Maintenance is being performed in the printer.

After maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.

### 2) Waiting to press [Operation] button in printer.

Before performing Daily maintenance, press Operation key on the printer panel and then start Daily maintenance.

Remote Panel			
Printer model :	VJ-628MP Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status:	Waiting to press [Operation] button in printer.	Printer Info.	Exit
Maintenance	-		
Back C	cel Star		
Đ	Press [Operation] button in the printer to perform daily maintenance.         If you want to cancel maintenance, click [Cancel] button in MSM.         [Note]         Do not remove ink cartridges/ink bags during cleaning. Air may enter the ink tubes.		

No	Name	Description
1	Cancel	Cancel to perform Daily maintenance.

# NOTE

• Before starting daily maintenance, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

### 3) Cleaning

The printer performs head cleaning before daily maintenance.

Please wait until the cleaning is complete.

Remote Panel			_					
Printer model :	VJ-628MP	Printer Serial No. :	_	Remote Panel Mode :		Remote Panel	l Mode	Up
Status:	Cle	aning				Printer Inf	0.	
Maintenance								
Back	Cancel Start	Periodical maintenance printer performance.	ce is required to ma	intain the				
		19						
	Detail Print Clea	er is performing a print ning takes about 1 min	head cleaning. utes.					
	[Not	e]						
	Dor	ot remove ink cartridge	es/ink bags during	g cleaning. Air may er	iter the ink tubes.			

No.	Name	lame Description		
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.		

# NOTE

- After the cleaning is complete, the printer automatically moves the print head to the daily maintenance position.
- Do not remove ink cartridges/ink bags during cleaning. Air may enter the ink tubes.

## 4) Error confirmation during cleaning

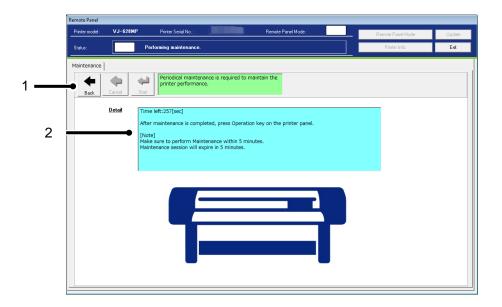
If an error occurs during cleaning and the cleaning is interrupted, correct the error displayed on the screen.



### 5) Performing maintenance

Daily maintenance is being performed in the printer.

After daily maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.



No.	Name	Description	
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.	
2	Detail	Daily maintenance elapsed time is displayed.	

# NOTE

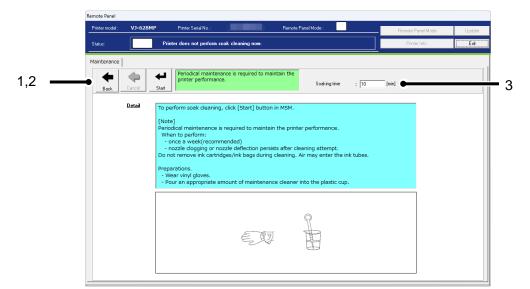
- After Daily maintenance is completed, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.
- Since your session will expire in 5 minutes, perform Daily maintenance within 5 minutes.
   If your session has expired, finish Daily maintenance.

### (3) Soak Cleaning

Remotely perform soak cleaning.

1) Check Printer Status

Before performing soak cleaning, check the printer status.



No.	Name	Description			
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.			
2	Enter	Instruct the printer to perform Soak Cleaning.			
3	Soaking time	Set soaking time. Setting :1 Min ~ < 10 Min > ~ 99 Min Unit :1 Min			

2)Waiting to press [Operation] button in printer.

Before performing soak cleaning, press Operation key on the printer panel and then start soak cleaning.

				Remote Panel Mode	Up
Status:	Wai	iting to press [Operation] button in printer.		Printer Info.	E
Maintenance					
	<b>4</b>	Periodical maintenance is required to maintain the printer performance.			
Back	Cancel Start	printer performance.	Soaking time : 10	[min]	
	Detail Press	[Operation] button in the printer to perform sork cleat arriage moves to the maintenance position (left side of	ning. of the printer).		
		u want to cancel soak cleaning, click [Cancel] button i			
	11 you	want to cancersoak cleaning, click [cancer] battonn	r Hoh.		

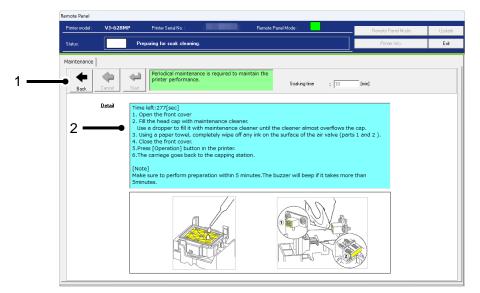
No.	Name	Description
1	Cancel	Cancel to perform soak cleangin.



• Before starting soak cleaning, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

#### 3) Preparing for soak cleaning

The printer is now preparing for soak cleaning.Please refer to the manual for preparation.



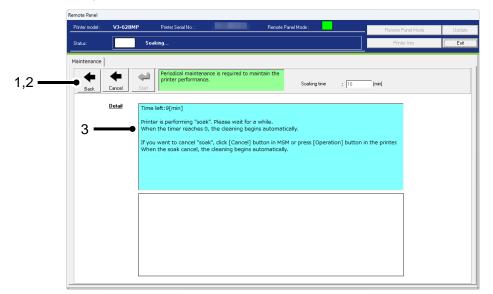
No.	Name	Description		
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.		
2	Detail	Displays the time remaining for preparation.		

# NOTE

• Please since your session will expire in 5 minutes, perform preparing within 5 minutes.

### 4) Soaking

Printer is performing "soak". Please wait for a while.



No.	D. Name Description	
1	Back Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.	
2	Cancel	Cancel the soaking. After canceling, the cleaning process will begin.
3	Detail	Displays the time remaining for soaking.

### 5) Cleaning

Printer is performing "cleaning". Please wait for a while.

Printer model :	VJ-628MP	Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	
Status:	C	eaning	Printer Info.	
Maintenance				
Back	Cancel Start	Periodical maintenance is required to maintain the printer performance. Soaking time ; 10	[min]	
	Cle-	ter is performing a printhead cleaning. nring takes about 1 minutes. te] not remove ink cartridges/ink bags during cleaning. Air may enter the ink tubes.		

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

### 6) Error confirmation during cleaning

If an error occurs during cleaning and the cleaning is interrupted, correct the error displayed on the screen.

Remote Panel Printer model :	VJ-628MP Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :		_
Status:	Cleaning	Remote Panel Mode Printer Info.	Update Exit
Maintenance	Detail         Periodical maintenance is required to maintain the printer performance.           Detail         Cleaning has been interrupted.           Check the followings.         - Close the Front Cover.		
	- No Cartridge No. : 1		

### 13.1.3.4. Cleaning

Performs head cleaning.

mote Panel				
Printer model : VJ-628	Printer Serial No	Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status : Get p	printer Information: Success		Printer Info.	Exit
Printer Status Printer Control Media	Setting Advanced Setting			
Printer Control	Test Print		Maintenance	
			-	$\leftarrow$
Media Feed	Nozzle Check Mode Print	Setup List Palette	CR Maintenance Long	store
Cleaning				
Short No	rmal Long	Little Charge Initial Charge		
<b>I</b>	2 3	4 5		

No.	Name	Description
1	Short Cleaning	Discharges smaller amount of ink compared to "Normal".
2	Normal Cleaning	Select this mode normally.
3	Long Cleaning	Discharges larger amount of ink compare to "Normal". Used when the print head does not improve by normal Head cleaning.
4	Little Charge	Refills a small amount of ink. Charge a small amount of ink when printing is not stable after initial ink charge.
5	Initial Charge	Perform initial ink charge. Refer to the (1) Initial Charge for the details.

# NOTE

• Do not remove ink cartridges/ink bags during cleaning. Air may enter the ink tubes.

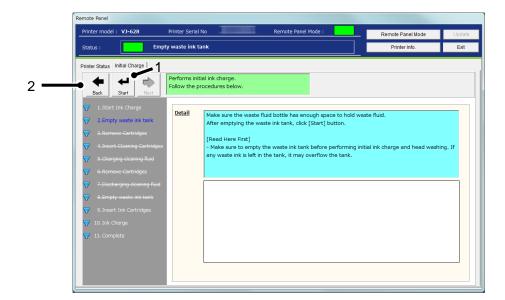
## (1) Initial Charge

Perform the initial ink charge after ink cartridges are inserted into the correct slots.

#### 1) Empty Waste Ink Tank

Empty the waste ink tank before performing initial ink charge.

After disposing the waste ink, click [Start] button to reset the waste ink counter.



No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Reset the waste ink counter.
2	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

## NOTE

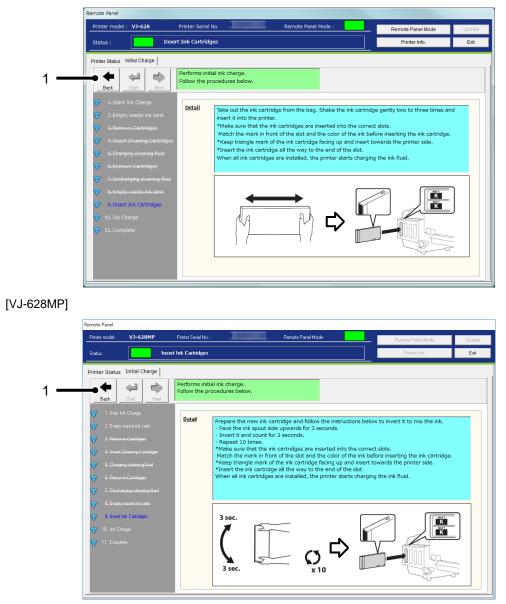
• Initial charge produces waste ink. Make sure to empty the waste ink tank before performing the initial ink charge. If waste ink is left in the tank, it may overflow the tank.

#### 2) Insert Ink Cartridges

After the counter reset, insert the ink cartridges.

After the ink cartridges are inserted into the correct slots, the printer will start initial ink charge.

[VJ-628/628X/XPJ-C641SR-P]



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

# 3) Ink Charge

The printer is charging inks.

Status Initial Charge	
A. Start Ink Charge     A. Ennove Cartridges     A complete     A. Start Ink Charge     A complete     A c	eration and pause operation are reper

No.	Name Description	
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

# 4) Complete

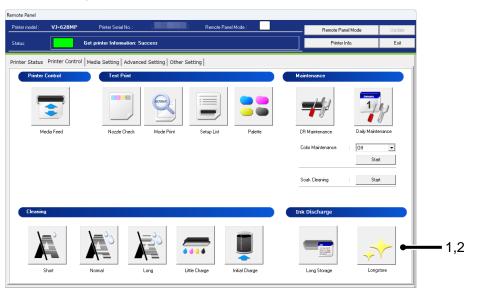
Initial ink charge has been completed.

	Performs initial ink charge. Follow the procedures below.	
<ul> <li>1.Start Ink Charge</li> <li>2.Empty waste ink tank</li> <li>3.Remove Cartridges</li> <li>4.Insert Cleaning Cartridges</li> <li>5.Charging cleaning fluid</li> <li>6.Remove Cartridges</li> <li>7.Discharging cleaning fluid</li> <li>8.Empty waste ink tank</li> <li>9.Insert Ink Cartridges</li> <li>10. Ink Charge</li> <li>11. Complete</li> </ul>	Detail         Initial ink charge has been completed.           Set the media and perform test printing.	

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

## 13.1.3.5. Ink Discharge

Remotely perform ink discharge.



No.	Name	Description           Remotely perform LongStorage.	
1	Long Storage *1		
2	LongStore	Remotely perform LongStore.	

# NOTE

• \*1 This function is available for VJ-628MP.

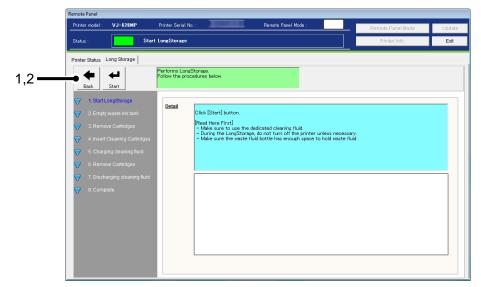
## (1) Long Storage

If you leave the printer for over 2 week, perform Long Storage to clean the entire ink system and store the printer with turned off.



• Make sure to use the dedicated cleaning fluid.

# 1) Start LongStorage

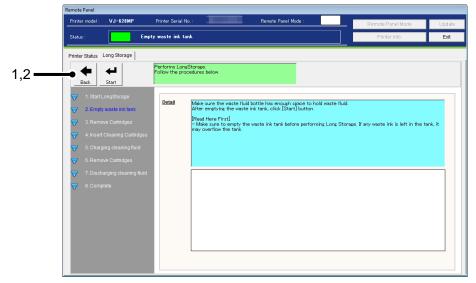


l	No.	Name	Description
	1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
	2	Start	Start Long Storage.

#### 2) Empty Waste Ink Tank

Empty the waste ink tank before performing "Longstorage" maintenance.

After disposing the waste ink, click [Start] button to reset the waste ink counter.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
2	Start	Reset the waste ink counter.

# NOTE

• Performing "Longstorage" maintenance produces waste ink. Make sure to empty the waste ink tank before this operation. If waste ink is left in the tank, it may overflow the tank.

## 3) Remove Cartridges

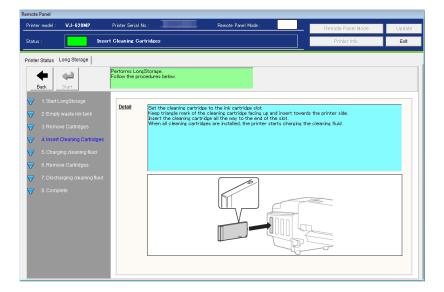
This message is displayed when any cartridge is inserted in the printer.

If no cartridge is inserted, this message will be skipped.

Remote Panel						
Printer model : VJ-628MP Printer Serial No	Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update			
Status : Remove Cartridges	atus : Remove Gartridees Printer Info. Exit					
Printer Status Long Storage						
Back Start	itorage. dures below.					
<ul> <li>✓ 1. Start LongStorage</li> <li>✓ 2. Empty waste ink tank</li> </ul>	Remove all the ink cartridges.					
3. Remove Cartridges     4. Insert Cleaning Cartridges						
<ul> <li>5. Charging cleaning fluid</li> <li>6. Remove Cartridges</li> </ul>						
<ul> <li>7. Discharging cleaning fluid</li> </ul>						
8.Complete						

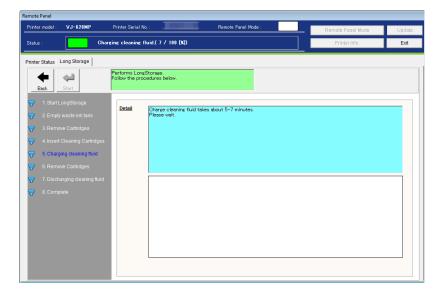
# 4) Insert Cleaning Cartridges

Insert cleaning cartridges to all the slots.



## 5) Charging cleaning fluid

After the cleaning cartridges are inserted into the slots, the printer will start charging cleaning fluid.



## 6) Remove Cartridges

After charging cleaning fluid, remove all the cleaning cartridges.

inter model : VJ-628MP	Printer Serial	No.: Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Updat
atus : Remov	e Cartridge	\$	Printer Info.	Exit
nter Status Long Storage				
<b>← →</b>	Performs Lor Follow the pr	sStorage. needures below.		
Back Start				
7 1. Start LongStorage				
2. Empty waste ink tank	Detail	Remove all the ink cartridges.		
3. Remove Cartridges				
4. Insert Cleaning Cartridges				
5. Charging cleaning fluid				
7 6. Remove Cartridges				
7. Discharging cleaning fluid				
7 8. Complete				

## 7) Discharging cleaning fluid

After removing the cleaning cartridges, the printer will discharge cleaning fluid.

Printer model : VJ-628MP Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status : Discharging cleaning fluid( 2 / 100 (x))	Printer Info.	Exit
Statu     Discharene cleaning Tunk 77 Im (b)       Printer Status     Long Storage       Image: Status     Performs LongStorage       Image: Status     Performs LongStorage		

## 8) Complete

"Longstorage" maintenance has been completed.

Turn off the printer.

Printer model : VJ-628MP			Remote Panel Mode
Status : C	ompleted LongStorage.		Printer Info.
Printer Status Long Storage			
	Performs LongStora	çe.	
•	Follow the procedure	as below.	
Back Start			
1. Start LongStorage	Detail I on	sStorase has been completed.	
2. Empty waste ink tank		ad Here First]	
3. Remove Cartridges			
4. Insert Cleaning Cartridge	IS		
5. Charging cleaning fluid			
<ul> <li>6. Remove Cartridges</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>7. Discharging cleaning flu</li> </ul>	d I		
<ul> <li>8. Complete</li> </ul>			
V 6. Complete			

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

# (2) Longstore

# (2)-1 XPJ-C641SR-P

Wash the print head with the cleaning fluid.

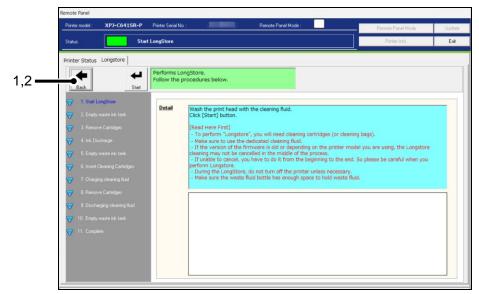
# NOTE

- To perform "Longstore", you will need cleaning cartridges (or cleaning bags).
- Make sure to use the dedicated cleaning fluid.
- If the version of the firmware is old or depending on the printer model you are using, the Longstore cleaning may not be cancelled in the middle of the process.
- If unable to cancel, you have to do it from the beginning to the end. So please be careful when you perform Longstore.

## 1) Confirmation

Confirmat	ion	$\times$
?	Longstore Start. Are you sure you want to continue? [Caution] - To perform "Longstore", you will need cleaning cartridges (or cleaning bags). - Make sure to use the dedicated cleaning fluid. - If the version of the firmware is old or depending on the printer model you are using, the Longstore cleaning may not be cancelled in the middle of the process. - If unable to cancel, you have to do it from the beginning to the end. So please be careful when you perform Longstore.	

## 2) Start LongStore

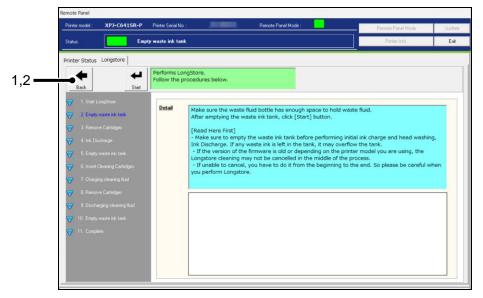


No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Start LongStore.
2	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

#### 3) Empty Waste Ink Tank

Empty the waste ink tank before performing "Longstore" maintenance.

After disposing the waste ink, click [Start] button to reset the waste ink counter.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
2	Start	Reset the waste ink counter.

# NOTE

• Performing "Longstore" maintenance produces waste ink. Make sure to empty the waste ink tank before this operation. If waste ink is left in the tank, it may overflow the tank.

## 4) Remove Cartridges

**No.** 1

This message is displayed when any cartridge is inserted in the printer.

If no cartridge is inserted, this message will be skipped.

Remote Panel			
Printer model: XPJ-C641SR-P Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status: Remove Cartridges		Printer Info.	Exit
Beck     Start       ↓     1. Start LongStone       ↓     2. Empty waste ink tank.       ↓     3. Remove Cantridges       ↓     4. Ink. Discharge       ↓     5. Empty waste ink tank.       ↓     5. Empty waste ink tank.       ↓     6. Invest Clearing Cantridges       ↓     7. Charging clearing fluid       ↓     8. Remove Cantridges       ↓     10. Empty waste ink tank.       ↓     10. Empty waste ink tank.       ↓     11. Completes	cedures below.  Remove all the ink cartridges.  [Read Here First] - If the version of the firmware is old or depending on the printer Longstore cleaning may not be cancelled in the middle of the proc - If unable to cancel, you have to do it from the beginning to the you perform Longstore.	ess. end. So please be careful wi	hen
Name	Des	scription	
	Go back to the Printer Control	Main Menu.	

## 5) Discharging cleaning fluid

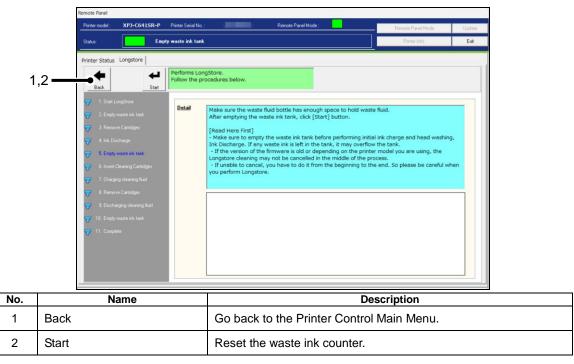
After the ink cartridges are removed the slots, the printer will start ink discharge.

inter model :	XPJ-C641SR-P Printer Serial	No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
alus	Ink Discharge( 2	f 100 [\$])	Printer Info.	Exit
inter Status	Longstore			
<b>e</b> Back	Stat	.ongStore. . procedures below.		
7 1. Start Li 7 2. Emply:	ongStore Waste ink. tank.	Discharge ink fluid takes about 7.5 minutes. Please wait.		
3. Remov	ve Cartridges			
4. Ink Dis	charge			
	waste ink tank			
	Deaning Cartridges			
	ng cleaning fluid			
	re Cartridges			
	iging cleaning fluid			
	waste inik tanik			
7 11. Comple	ste			

#### 6) Empty Waste Ink Tank

Empty the waste ink tank before performing "Longstore" maintenance.

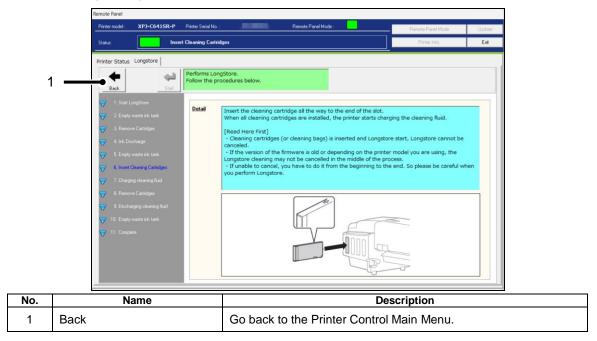
After disposing the waste ink, click [Start] button to reset the waste ink counter.



- NOTE
- Performing "Longstore" maintenance produces waste ink. Make sure to empty the waste ink tank before this operation. If waste ink is left in the tank, it may overflow the tank.

#### 7) Insert Cleaning Cartridges

Insert cleaning cartridges to all the slots.



#### 8) Charging cleaning fluid

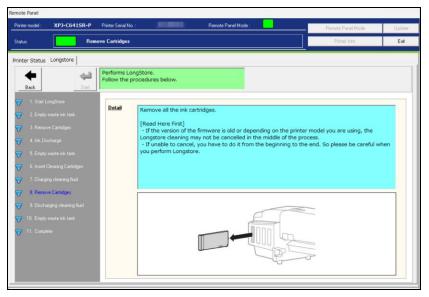
1

After the cleaning cartridges are inserted into the slots, the printer will start charging cleaning fluid.

Printer Status Longstore		ongStore. procedures below.	
1. Start LongStore     2. Empty waste nik tank     3. Remove Carthdges     4. Ink Discharge     5. Empty waste nik tank     6. Insert Cleaning Castridges     7. Olarging cleaning fluid     8. Remove Castridges     9. Discharging cleaning fluid     10. Empty waste nik tank.     11. Complete	Detail	Charge cleaning fluid takes about 5-7 minutes. Please wait. [Read Here First] - Longstore cannot be canceled, you have to do the end.	

#### 9) Remove Cartridges

After charging cleaning fluid, remove all the cleaning cartridges.



10) Discharging cleaning fluid

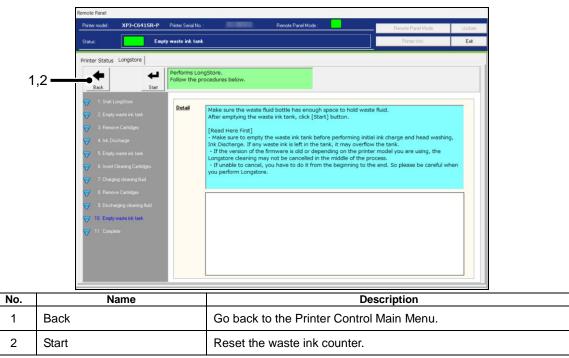
After removing the cleaning cartridges, the printer will discharge cleaning fluid.

Printer model: XPJ-C641SR-P Printer S	erial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status: Discharging o	leaning fluid( 2 / 100 [%])	Printer Info.	Exit
Printer Status     Longstore       Isar     Isar       Isar     Isar	ms LongStore. the procedures below.		

#### 11) Empty Waste Ink Tank

Empty the waste ink tank before performing "Longstore" maintenance.

After disposing the waste ink, click [Start] button to reset the waste ink counter.



# NOTE

• Performing "Longstore" maintenance produces waste ink. Make sure to empty the waste ink tank before this operation. If waste ink is left in the tank, it may overflow the tank.

## 12) Complete

"Longstore" maintenance has been completed.

Restart the printer and perform initial ink charge.

<b>+</b>	ongStore. procedures below.	
Back     Start LongStore       ✓     1. Start LongStore       ✓     2. Encly waste ink tank.       ✓     3. Remove Cathologes       ✓     4. Ink. Discharge       ✓     5. Encly waste ink tank.       ✓     6. Inset Osering Cathologes       ✓     7. Charging clearing fluid       ✓     8. Remove Cathologes       ✓     9. Discharging clearing fluid       ✓     10. Empty waste ink tank.       ✓     11. Complete	LongStore has been completed. [Read Here First] Restart the printer and perform initial ink charge.	

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

## (2)-2 VJ-628/628X/628MP

Wash the print head with the cleaning fluid.

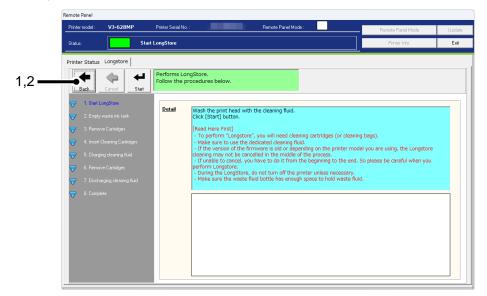
# NOTE

- To perform "Longstore", you will need cleaning cartridges (or cleaning bags).
- Make sure to use the dedicated cleaning fluid.
- If the version of the firmware is old or depending on the printer model you are using, the Longstore cleaning may not be cancelled in the middle of the process.
- If unable to cancel, you have to do it from the beginning to the end. So please be careful when you perform Longstore.

#### 1) Confirmation



#### 2) Start LongStore

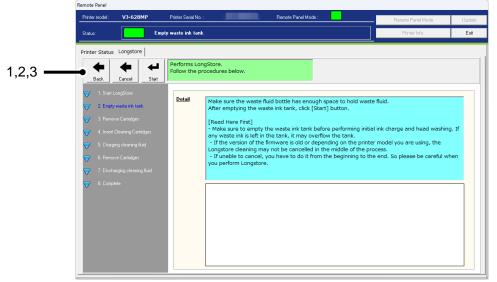


No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Start LongStore.
2	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

3) Empty Waste Ink Tank

Empty the waste ink tank before performing "Longstore" maintenance.

After disposing the waste ink, click [Start] button to reset the waste ink counter.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
2	Cancel	Cancel Longstore.
3	Start	Reset the waste ink counter.

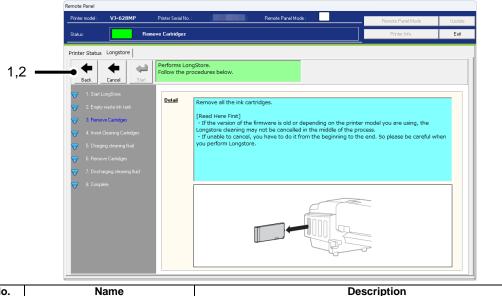
# NOTE

- Performing "Longstore" maintenance produces waste ink. Make sure to empty the waste ink tank before this operation. If waste ink is left in the tank, it may overflow the tank.
- If the version of the firmware is old or depending on the printer model you are using, the Longstore cleaning may not be cancelled in the middle of the process.

#### 4) Remove Cartridges

This message is displayed when any cartridge is inserted in the printer.

If no cartridge is inserted, this message will be skipped.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
2	Cancel	Cancel Longstore.

# NOTE

• If the version of the firmware is old or depending on the printer model you are using, the Longstore cleaning may not be cancelled in the middle of the process

#### 5) Insert Cleaning Cartridges

Insert cleaning cartridges to all the slots.

Statu:     Intert Cleaning Cartridges     Prote Unio     Exit       Wrinter Status     Longstore       Winter Status     Longstore       Back     Cancel     Stat       9     1. Stat Longstore     Follow the procedures below.       2     Engly wate ink lank       3     Renowe Catridges       4     Insert the cleaning cartridges are installed, the printer starts charging the cleaning fluid.       5     Charging Charing fluid       6     Renowe Catridges       7     Discharging Charing fluid       8     Renowe Catridges       7     Discharging Charing fluid       8     Complete	Printer model : VJ-628MP Printer Serial	Io. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Image: Section of the forms LongStore. Follow the procedures below.         I Start LongStore         I I Start LongStore Cantridges (or cleaning bags) is inserted and Longstore start, Longstore cantrol be canceled.         I I Start LongStore         I I Start LongStore	Status: Insert Cleaning Ca	rtridges	Printer Info.	Exit
		Insert the cleaning cartridge all the way to the end of the slo When all cleaning cartridges are installed, the printer starts of [Read Here First] - Cleaning cartridges (or cleaning bags) is inserted and Long canceled. - If the version of the firmware is old or depending on the pr Longstore cleaning may not be cancelled in the middle of the - If unable to cancel, you have to do it from the beginning to	charging the cleaning fluid. gstore start, Longstore cannot be inter model you are using, the e process.	

# NOTE

- Cleaning cartridges (or cleaning bags) is inserted and Longstore start, Longstore cannot be canceled.
- If the version of the firmware is old or depending on the printer model you are using, the Longstore cleaning may not be cancelled in the middle of the process

#### 6) Charging cleaning fluid

After the cleaning cartridges are inserted into the slots, the printer will start charging cleaning fluid.

Status : Cha	rging cleanin	] fluid.( 3 / 100 [%])	Printer Info.	E
Printer Status Longstore				
4	Performs Lo	ngStore.		
Back Start		procedures below.		
▼ 1.Start LongStore	Detail	Charge cleaning fluid takes about 7 minutes.		
2.Empty waste ink tank		Please wait.		
3. Remove Cartridges				
4.Insert Cleaning Cartridges				
5. Charging cleaning fluid				
▼ 6. Remove Cartridges				
7.Discharging cleaning fluid				
💙 8.Complete				

# NOTE

• Longstore cannot be canceled, you have to do the end.

#### 7) Remove Cartridges

After charging cleaning fluid, remove all the cleaning cartridges.

inter model : VJ-628 Prin	ter Serial No	Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
atus : Remove C	artridges		Printer Info.	Exit
nter Status Longstore			_	
	forms LongStore.			
Back Start	ow the procedures below.			
	Remove all the	ink cartridges.		
7 2.Empty waste ink tank				
7 3.Remove Cartridges				
4. Insert Cleaning Cartridges				
5. Charging cleaning fluid				
6.Remove Cartridges				
7. Discharging cleaning fluid				
7 8.Complete			6	
			_	
		-		
		C		

#### 8) Discharging cleaning fluid

After removing the cleaning cartridges, the printer will discharge cleaning fluid.

inter model : VJ-628	Printer Seria	No Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
tatus : Disch	arging clear	ing fluid( 5 / 100 [%])	Printer Info.	Exit
nter Status Longstore				
	Performs Lo Follow the p	ngStore. rocedures below.		
<ul><li>1. Start LongStore</li><li>2. Empty waste ink tank</li></ul>	Detail	Discharge cleaning fluid takes about 2.5 minutes. Please wait.		_
<ul><li>3.Remove Cartridges</li><li>4.Insert Cleaning Cartridges</li></ul>				
<ul> <li>5. Charging cleaning fluid</li> </ul>				
6.Remove Cartridges				
7 7.Discharging cleaning fluid				
7 8.Complete				

#### 9) Complete

"Longstore" maintenance has been completed.

Restart the printer and perform initial ink charge.

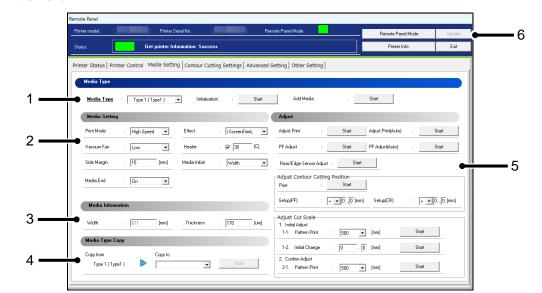
Printer Status Longstore Back Start	Performs Longs Follow the proc		
<ul> <li>I.Start LongStore</li> <li>2.Empty waste ink tank</li> <li>3.Remove Cartridges</li> <li>4.Insert Cleaning Cartridges</li> <li>S.Charging cleaning fluid</li> <li>6.Remove Cartridges</li> <li>7.Discharging cleaning fluid</li> <li>8.Complete</li> </ul>		.ongStore has been completed. Read Here First] Restart the printer and perform initial ink charge.	

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

## 13.1.4 Media Setting

Check and change the media setting.

If you use more than one media, you can store the each media setting including the heater temperature from this menu.



No.	Name	Description
1	Media Type	Check and change the media type loaded in the printer.
2	Media Setting	Check and change the current media setting.
3	Media Information	Check and change the media information set in the printer.
4	Media Type Copy	Copy the current media setting to other Media Type.
5	Adjust	Check and change the media adjust set in the printer.
6	Update	Change the media setting.

# NOTE

- To change the setting, change the values or settings and then click [Update] button.
- Multiple settings can be changed at once.

## 13.1.4.1. Media Type

Check and change the Media Type loaded in the printer.

nter model : Printer	Serial No. : R	emote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
stus: Get printer li	formation: Success		Printer Info.	Exit
nter Status Printer Control Media Sett	ng Advanced Setting Other Setting			
Media Type				
Media Type : Type1(Type1)	Initialization : Start	Add Media :	Start	
Media Setting		Adjust		
Print Mode : Fine 💌	Effect : Fine&Fog 💌	Adjust Print : Start		
Vacuum Fan : High 💌	Heater : 🔽 [C]	PF Adjust : Start		
Side Margin : 5 [mm]	Media Initial : Width 💌	Rear/Edge Sensor Adjust : Start		
Media End : On 💌				
Media Information				
Width : 611 [mm]	Thickness : 280 [um]			
Media Type Copy				
Copy from Copy to Type 1 (Type 1)	▼ Start			

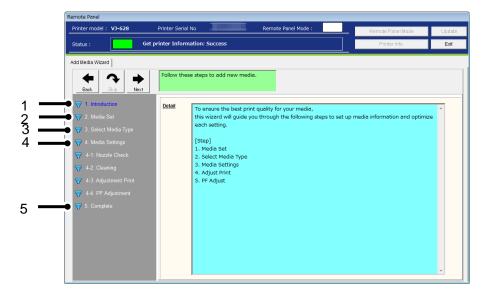
No.	Name	Description
1	Media Type	Check and change the Media Type loaded in the printer.
2	Initialization	Reset the Media Type currently loaded in the printer.
3	Add Media *1	Add a new media by following the wizard.

NOTE

- To change the setting, change the values or settings and then click [Update] button.
- \*1 The Cleaning Timer setting is not available for XPJ-C641SR-P.

## (1) Add Media

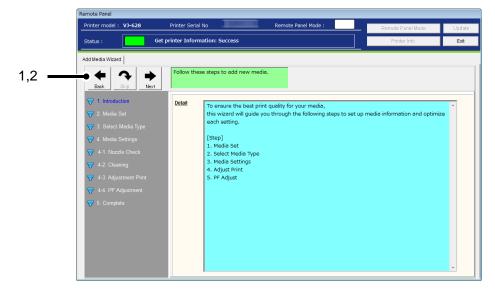
To add a new media, the Add Media wizard guides the users through the necessary setting or adjustment.



No.	Name	Description
1	Introduction	Explains how to add a new media.
2	Media Set	Explains how to load a media to the printer.
3	Select Media Type	Select a media type to be added.
4	Media Settings	Specify the media settings or perform adjustment to a new media.
5	Complete	Exit the wizard.

## 1)Introduction

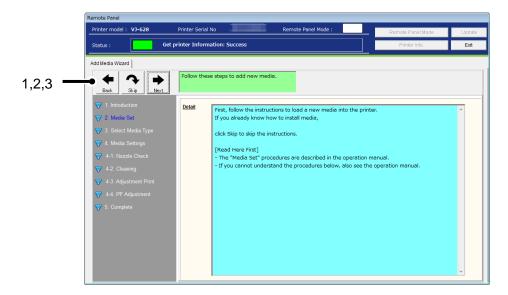
Explains how to add a new media.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Cancel to add a new media and go back to the Media Setting tab.
2	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

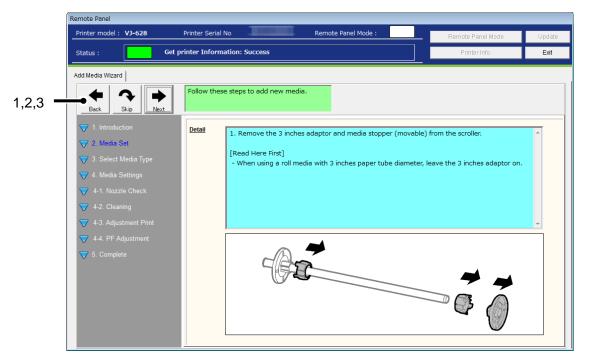
## 2) Media Set

Explains how to load a media.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to go to the Select Media Type menu.
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

2-1) Media Set: Step 1

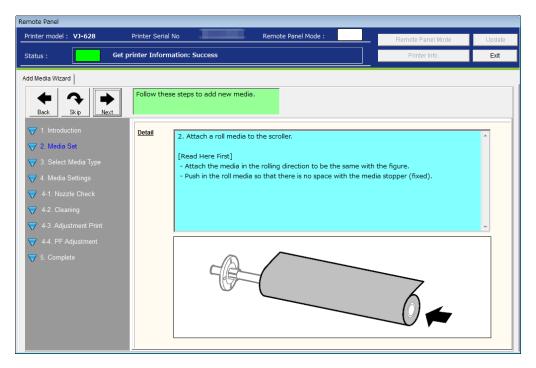


No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to go to the Select Media Type menu
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

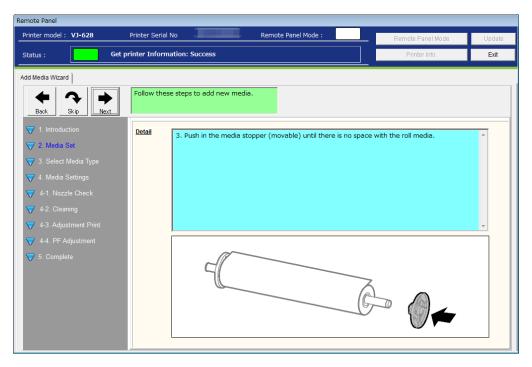
# NOTE

• This button functions apply to the all "Media Set" menu pages.

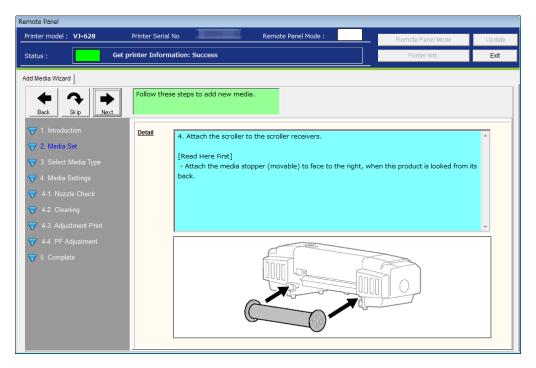
#### 2-2) Media Set: Step 2



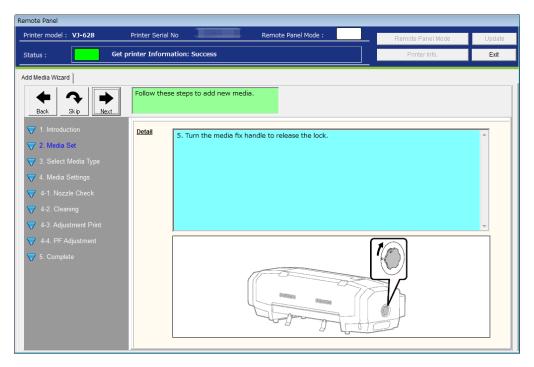
## 2-3) Media Set: Step 3



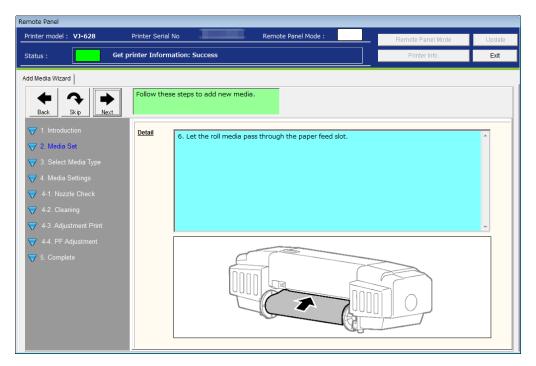
#### 2-4) Media Set: Step 4



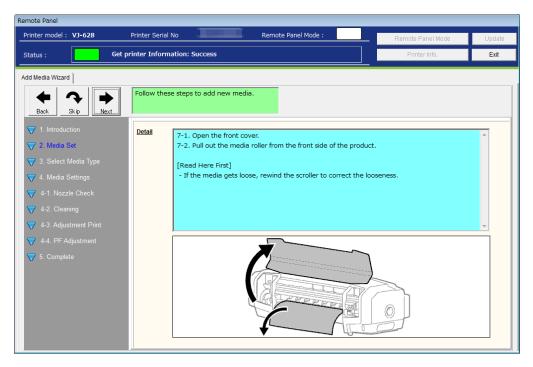
## 2-5) Media Set: Step 5



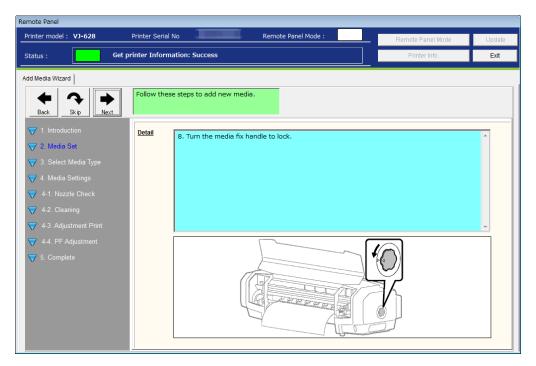
#### 2-6) Media Set: Step 6



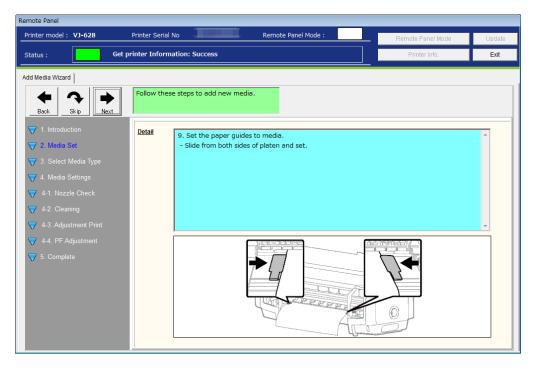
#### 2-7) Media Set: Step 7



#### 2-8) Media Set: Step 8



## 2-9) Media Set: Step 9



2-10) Media Set: Step 10

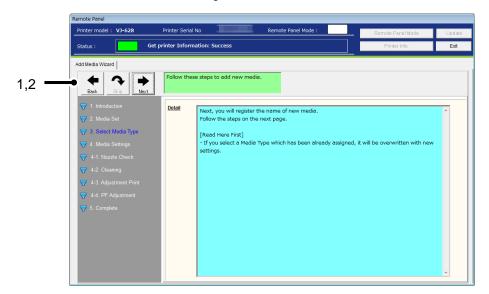
Printer model : VJ-628	rinter Serial No	Remote Panel Mode	1
Status : Get p	nter Information: Success	Printer Info.	
Add Media Wizard			
Back Skip Next ∨ 1. Introduction ∨ 2. Media Set	Follow these steps to add new media.  Detail  10. Close the front cover.		
<ul> <li>✓ 3. Select Media Type</li> <li>✓ 4. Media Settings</li> <li>✓ 4-1. Nozzle Check</li> <li>✓ 4-2. Cleaning</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>4-3. Adjustment Print</li> <li>4-4. PF Adjustment</li> </ul>			
▼ 5. Complete	Chings: Biology		

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to go to the Select Media Type menu.
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

## 3) Select Media Type

Register a new media in the printer.

Follow the wizard instructions for media registration.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Next	Proceed to the next setting.



• This step cannot be skipped.

#### 3-1) Select Media Type

Select a media type for a new media.

Remote Panel		
Printer model : VJ-628	Printer Serial No Remote Panel Mode : Rem	ote Panel Mode Upo
Status : Get p	rinter Information: Success	Printer Info. E
Add Media Wizard		
Back Skip	Follow these steps to add new media.	
T. Introduction	Detail Choose a preset Media Type and enter a name of media to be displayed.	
<ul> <li>✓ 2. Media Set</li> <li>✓ 3. Select Media Type</li> </ul>	[Step] 1. Select a Media Type from the drop-down menu.	
💙 4. Media Settings	<ol> <li>Select a meale rype non-the diop down mend.</li> <li>Enter a name of media in the Media Name field.</li> </ol>	E
<ul> <li>4-1. Nozzle Check</li> <li>4-2. Cleaning</li> </ul>	[Read Here First] - If you select a Media Type which has been already assigned, it will be ov	erwritten with new
4-3. Adjustment Print	settings. - Media Name must be up to 10 characters long using letters and number.	Ţ
<ul> <li>✓ 4-4. PF Adjustment</li> <li>✓ 5. Complete</li> </ul>	Media Type : Type 1 (Type 1) 🔽 🖣 3	
0	Madia Name : Type 1 4	

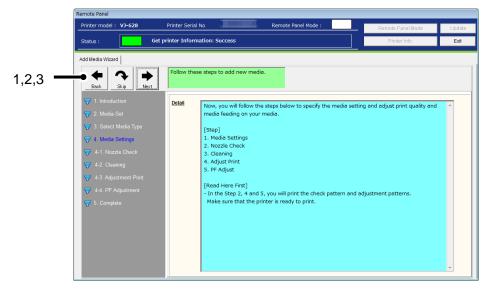
No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Next	Register a media type.
3	Media Type	Select a media type from the drop-down menu.
4	Media Name	Enter a media name.

# NOTE

- This step cannot be skipped.
- To edit the media name, place the cursor to the desired position.
- Up to 10 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered for the media name.

## 4) Media Settings

Specify the appropriate media settings to achieve the optimal print quality.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

## NOTE

• When skipping this menu, no change is applied to the current settings or adjustments.

#### 4-1) Media Settings

Specify the media settings.

	Remote Panel			
	Printer model : VJ-628MP	Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode Update	
	Status: Get p	winter Information: Success	Printer Info. Exit	
1,2,3 —	Add Media Wizard	Follow these steps to add new media.		-
		[Read Here First] - You can change the settings above when needed. Madia Name		
	<ul> <li>4-3. Adjustment Print</li> <li>4-4. PF Adjustment</li> <li>5. Complete</li> </ul>	Print Mode     :     Frine V     Elfect     :     Frine Fog     V       Vacuum Fan     :     High     V     Heater     :     IV     IV       Side Margin     :     5     [mm]     Media Initial     :     IV/dh     V	Media End : On 💌	4,5 6,7 8,9,10
		Wedia Setting           Widh         : [509 [mm]         Thickness         : [170 [µm]	-	11,12

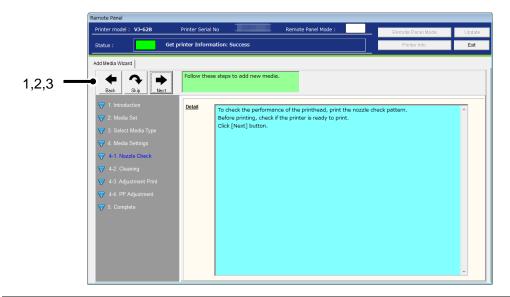
No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.
3	Next	Apply the media settings. Once clicked, go to the Nozzle Check menu.
4	Print Mode	Select the print mode.
5	Effect	Select the effect.
6	Vacuum Fan	Select the vacuum fan setting.
7	Heater	Specify the heater temperature.
8	Side Margin	Specify the side margin.
9	Media Initial	Select the media initialization setting.
10	Media End *1	Select the media end setting.
11	Width	Specify the media width.
12	Thickness	Specify the media thickness.

## NOTE

• \*1 This function is available for VJ-628MP.

#### 4-2) Nozzle Check

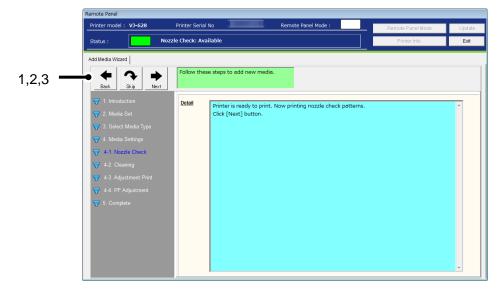
After applying the media settings, check the print head performance to ensure the print quality.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to go to the Print Quality Adjustment menu.
3	Next	Check if the printer is ready for print.

#### 4-3) Check the printer status

Check if the printer is ready for print.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to go to the Print Quality Adjustment menu.
3	Next	Requests the printer to print the nozzle check patterns.

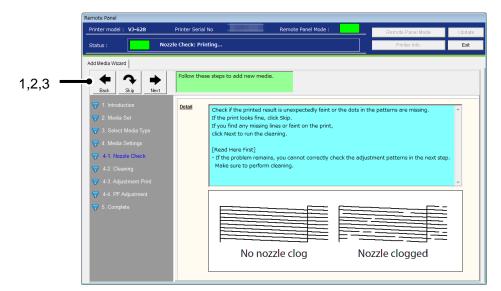
# NOTE

If the printer is not ready for print, the nozzle check patterns cannot be printed.
 Check the printer status before printing.

#### 4-4) Nozzle Check

Check the print head performance from the printed results.

If any missing line is found, perform the cleaning.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to go to the Print Quality Adjustment menu.
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

#### 4-5) Cleaning

Perform the cleaning after nozzle check, if necessary.

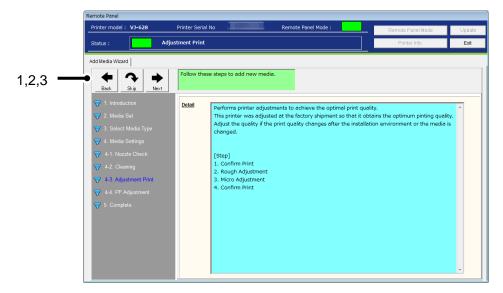
When the cleaning is started, go back to the nozzle check menu. Check the print head performance again.



	3 4 5 6		
No.	Name	Description	
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.	
2	Skip	Skip this menu to go to the Print Quality Adjustment menu.	
3	Short Cleaning	Discharges smaller amount of ink compared to "Normal". When the short cleaning is started, go back to the nozzle check menu.	
4	Normal Cleaning	Select this mode normally. When the normal cleaning is started, go back to the nozzle check menu.	
5	Long Cleaning	Discharges larger amount of ink compare to "Normal". When the long cleaning is started, go back to the nozzle check menu.	
6	Little Charge	Refills a small amount of ink. When the little charge is started, go back to the nozzle check menu.	

#### 4-6) Adjustment Print Wizard

Follow the steps to adjust the print quality.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

#### 4-6-1) Media Thickness

Enter the media thickness.

Remote Panel				
Printer model : VJ-628	inter Serial No Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update	
Status : Adju	nent Print	Printer Info.	Exit	
Adjustment Print Wizard	Follow these steps to adjust print quality.         Detail         Enter the thickness of new medie.         Then, click Next.         [Reed Here First]         If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.         Media Type : Type 1 (Type 1)         Thickness : Tia0 [um]	<sup>-</sup> 4 5		

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu and go to the Confirm Print menu.
3	Next	Apply the media thickness setting. Once clicked, go to the Confirm Print menu.
4	Media Type	Displays the media type to be added.
5	Thickness	Enter the media thickness in micrometer.

### 4-6-2) Confirm Print

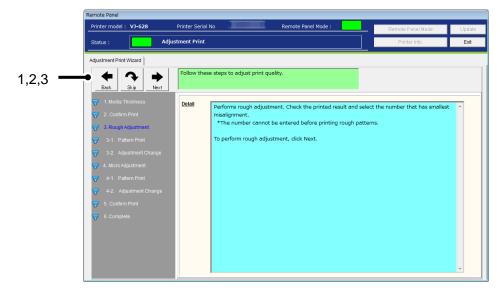
Prints the confirm patterns to check the current print quality.

Remote Panel						
Printer model :	VJ-628	Printer Serial	No Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update	
Status :	Adju	stment Print		Printer Info.	Exit	
Adjustment Print V	Vizard					
Back	→       Skip	Follow thes	e steps to adjust print quality.			
💙 1. Media Th		Detail	Performs confirm adjustment.		*	
2. Confirm	Print		Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine	adjustment, if necessary.		
💙 3. Rough Ac						
💙 3-1. Patte			Click Next to print the confirm pattern. The wizard will move t	o the rough adjustment menu.		
🏹 3-2. Adju:						
4. Micro Adji 🗸						
💙 4-1. Patte					Ŧ	
×						
5. Confirm i				+ + + + + Pattern r	ame	
₩ 6. Complete			Image: Second			

No.	Name	Description			
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.			
2	Skip	Skip this menu and go to the Rough Adjustment menu.			
3	Next	Prints the confirm patterns. Once clicked, go to the Rough Adjustment menu.			

## 4-6-3) Rough Adjustment

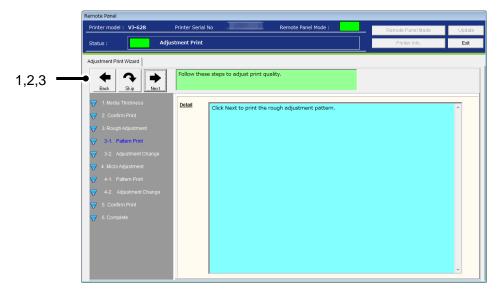
Performs the rough adjustment.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to go to the Micro Adjustment menu.
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

## 4-6-4) Rough Adjustment Print

Prints the rough adjustment patterns.



No.	Name	Description		
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.		
2	Skip	ip this menu to go to the Micro Adjustment menu.		
3	Next	Prints the rough adjustment patterns. Once clicked, go to the Rough Adjustment Change menu.		

#### 4-6-5) Rough Adjustment Change

Enter the rough adjustment value after checking the printed results.

Remote Panel			
Printer model : VJ-628	Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status: Adju	stment Print: Started to print patterns	Printer Info.	Exit
Adjustment Print Wizard			
• + • +	Follow these steps to adjust print quality.		
Back Skip Next			
💎 1. Media Thickness	Detail Carefully look at the print to determine the appropriate pat	torn and ontor each adjustment	<u>^</u>
2. Confirm Print	value. Click Next.	terr and enter each adjustment	
💙 3. Rough Adjustment	The adjustment values will be applied to this media.		
▽ 3-1. Pattern Print	The adjustment values this be applied to this media.		$\sim$
─ 3-2. Adjustment Change	[ Adjustment Value ]		
4. Micro Adjustment		▼ F 6 ▼	<b>v</b>
✓ 4-1. Pattern Print			-
<ul> <li>4-2. Adjustment Change</li> <li>5. Confirm Print</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>G. Complete</li> </ul>			
	I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I		
			rleight spaad up famity
		0 5 4 3 2 1	

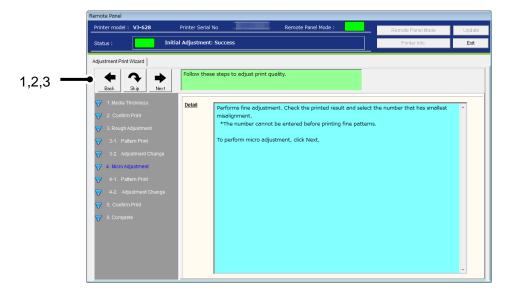
No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu and go to the micro adjustment menu.
3	Next	Apply the rough adjustment value change. Once clicked, go to the Micro Adjustment menu.
4	Adjustment Value	Enter each adjustment value.

# NOTE

• The available pattern and adjustment range changes depending on the printer model and ink type.

#### 4-6-6) Micro Adjustment

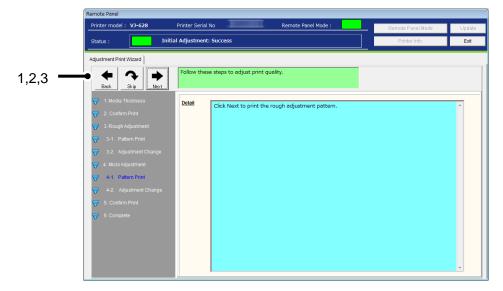
Performs the micro adjustment.



No.	Name	Description			
1	1 Back Go back to the previous menu.				
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.			
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.			

## 4-6-7) Micro Adjustment Print

Prints the micro adjustment patterns.



No.	Name	Description			
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.			
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.			
3	Next	Prints the micro adjustment patterns. Once clicked, go to the Micro Adjustment Change menu.			

#### 4-6-8) Micro Adjustment Set

Enter the micro adjustment value after checking the printed results.

Remote Panel					
Printer model : VJ	528 Printer Serial N	a:	Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status:	Adjustment Print: S	tarted to print patterns		Printer Info.	Exit
Adjustment Print W Back Skr ↓ 1. Media Thickw ↓ 2. Corlim Pire ↓ 3. Rough Adustin ↓ 3. Rough Adustin ↓ 3. Rough Adustin ↓ 4. Micro Adjustin ↓ 4. Micro Adjustin ↓ 4. Micro Adjustin ↓ 4. Adjustin ↓ 5. Complete	ard Pollow the Pollow the Pollo	ese steps to adjust prin Carefully look at th value. Click Next.	e print to determine the a lues will be applied to this	ind enter each adjustment	

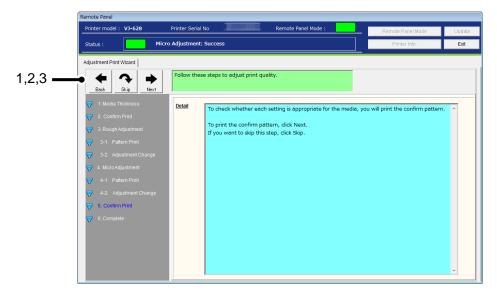
No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.
3	Next	Apply the micro adjustment value. Once clicked, go to the Confirm Print menu.
4	Adjustment Value	Enter each adjustment value.

# NOTE

• The available pattern and adjustment range changes depending on the printer model and ink type.

#### 4-6-9) Confirm Print

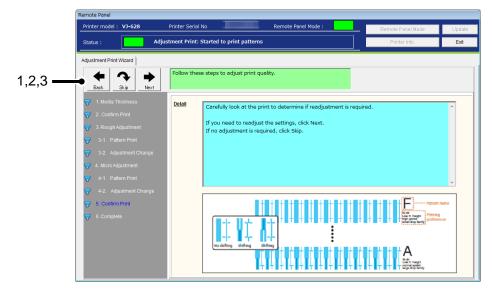
Prints the confirm patterns to check the adjustment results.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.
3	Next	Prints the confirm patterns.

### 4-6-10) Check the Printed Result

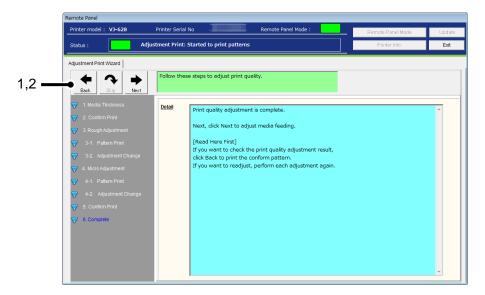
Check the printed results and re-perform the adjustment if necessary.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.
3	Next	Go back to the Micro Adjustment menu for readjustment.

## 4-6-11) Complete

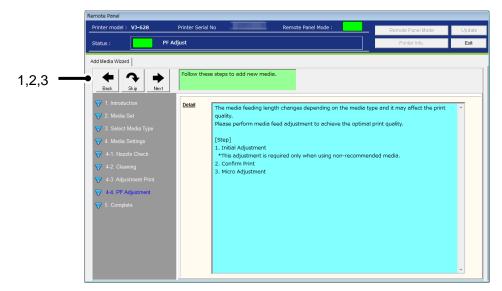
Exit the Print Quality Adjustment wizard.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

#### 4-7) Media Feed Adjustment

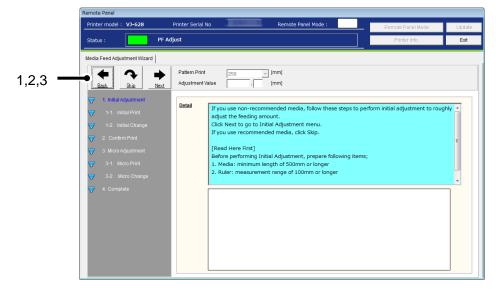
The media feeding length changes depending on the media type and it may affect the print quality. Perform the media feed adjustment to achieve the optimal print quality.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.

#### 4-7-1) Initial Adjustment

Performs the initial adjustment.



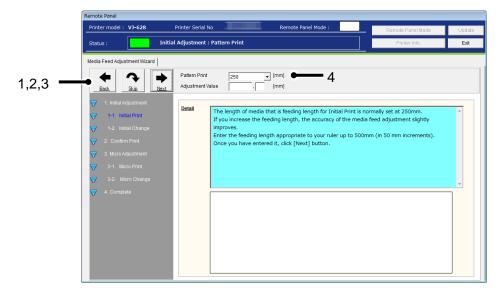
No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to go to the "Micro Adjustment" menu.
3	Next	Proceed to the next setting.



The initial adjustment is not required for the recommended media. Click Skip to skip this menu.

#### 4-7-2) Initial Print

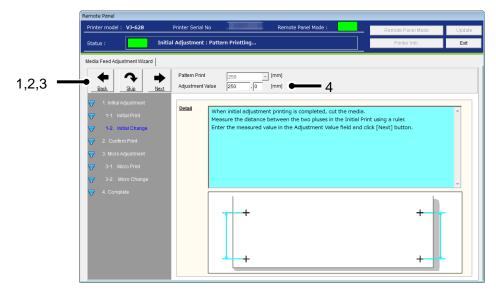
Prints the initial print patterns.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to go to the Micro Adjustment menu.
3	Next	Prints the initial print patterns.
4	Pattern Print	Enter the feeding length by clicking the arrow key. Adjustment range: 100mm - 500mm (in increment of 50mm) *250mm is default value.

## 4-7-3) Initial Change

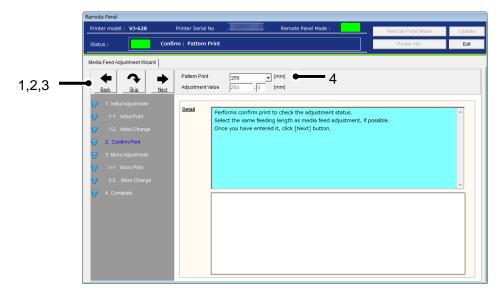
Set the adjustment value for the initial adjustment.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to go to the Micro Adjustment menu.
3	Next	Sets the adjustment value for the initial adjustment to the printer.
4	Adjustment Value	Enter the adjustment value for the initial change. Adjustment range: ±50mm from the initial print length (in increment of 0.1mm) e.g.) if the initial print feeding length is set to 250mm: initial change range: 200.0mm – 300.0mm

#### 4-7-4) Confirm Print

Prints the confirm print patterns to check the adjustment result.

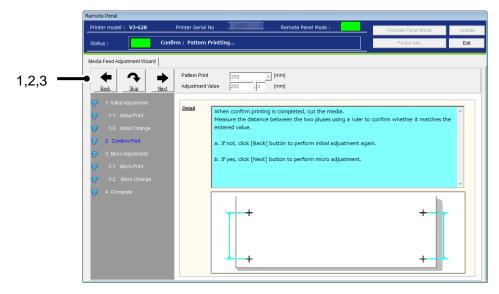


No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu and go to the Micro Adjustment menu.
3	Next	Prints the confirm print patterns.
4	Pattern Print	Enter the feeding length by clicking the arrow key. Adjustment range: 100mm - 500mm (in increment of 50mm) *250mm is default value.

#### 4-7-5) Confirm

When initial adjustment printing is completed, cut the media.

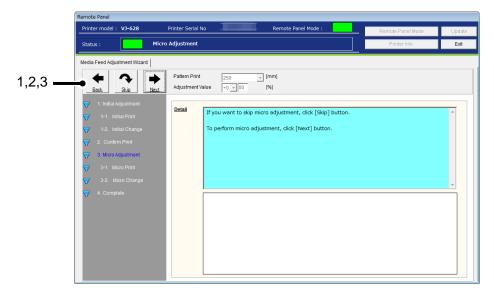
Measure the distance between the two pluses using a ruler to confirm whether it matches the entered value.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Proceed to the next setting.
3	Next	

### 4-7-6) Micro Adjustment

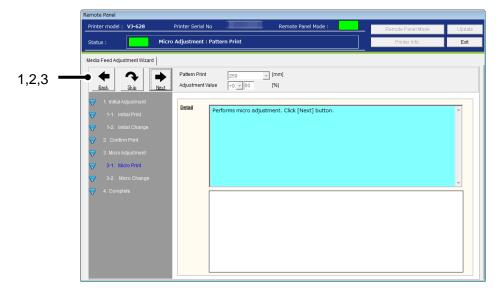
Performs the micro adjustment for the media feeding adjustment.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.
3	Next	Go to the "Micro Print" menu.

### 4-7-7) Micro Print

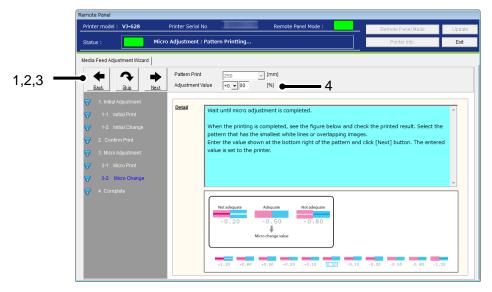
Prints the micro print patterns.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.
3	Next	Prints the micro adjustment patterns.

#### 4-7-8) Micro Change

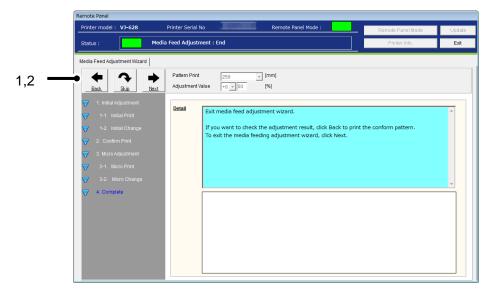
Set the adjustment value for the micro adjustment.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back Go back to the previous menu.	
2	Skip	Skip this menu to exit the wizard.
3	Next	Sets the adjustment value for the micro adjustment to the printer.
4	Adjustment Value	Enter the adjustment value for the micro adjustment. Adjustment range: ±5.00% (in increment of 0.01%)

#### 4-7-9) Complete

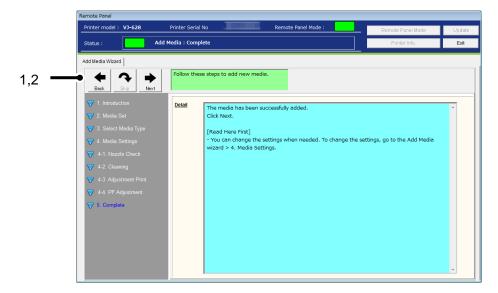
Exit the Media Feeding Adjustment Wizard.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Next	Go back to the Add Media wizard.

## 5) Complete

Exit the Add Media wizard.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the previous menu.
2	Next	Go to the Media Setting tab.

### 13.1.4.2. Media Setting

Check and change the media setting currently loaded in the printer.

		Remote Panel						
		Pinter model : Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Update						
		Status: Get printer Information: Success Printer Info						
	Printer Status   Printer Control   Media Setting   Contour Cutting Settings   Advanced Setting   Other Setting							
		Nedia Type						
		Media Ivee : Type 1 (Type 1 )  Initialization : Start						
		Media Setting Adjust						
1,2		Print Mode : High Speed 🗨 Effect : isCreenFineL 💌 Adjust Print : Start Adjust Print(Auto) : Start						
3,4		Vacuum Fan : Low 👻 Heater : 🖾 30 [C] PFFAdjust : Start FFAdjust(Auto) : Start						
1,2 3,4 5,6		Side Margin : 15 [nm] Media Initial : Wrath 💌						
7		Meda End : 0n      Print : Start						
		Media Information         Setup(PF)         :         •						
		- Adjust Cut Scale Width : [511 [mm] Thickness : [170 [um] 1. Initia Adjust 1 1. I						
		Media Type Copy  1.2. Initial Change : [0] [0] [mm] Start						
		Copy to Copy to Start 2. Continue Charge 1 0 (mm) Start 2. Continue Adjust 2. Continu						

No.	Name	Description
1	Print Mode	Check and change the Print Mode of the media.
2	Effect	Check and change the Effect of the media.
3	Vacuum Fan	Check and change the vacuum fan of the media.
4	Heater	Check and change the heater temperature for the media.
5	Side Margin	Check and change the side margin setting of the media.
6	Media Initial	Check and change the media initialization setting of the media.
7	Media End *1	Check and change the media end setting of the media.

# NOTE

- To change the setting, change the values or settings and then click [Update] button.
- Multiple settings can be changed at once.
- If the previous version of F/W is installed, the settings may not be properly reflected. Make sure to install the latest F/W.
- \*1 This function is available for VJ-628MP.

# 13.1.4.3. Adjust

Adjust the media loaded in the printer.

ter model :	Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel M	Aode:	Remote Panel Mode	Update	
tus: G	et printer Information: Success			Printer Info.	Exit	
ter Status Printer Control	Media Setting Contour Cutting	g Settings Advanced Setting C	ther Setting			
Media Type						
Media Type : Type 1	Type1) 💌 Initialization	Start				
Media Setting		Adjust				
Print Mode : High Spe	ed 💌 Effect	i-ScreenFineL	rint : Start	Adjust Print(Auto)	Start	1
Vacuum Fan : Low	✓ Heater	: 🔽 30 [C] PF Adju	st : Start	PF Adjust(Auto) :	Start	
Side Margin : 15	[mm] Media Initial	: Width  Rear/E	dge SensorAdjust : Sta	art e		<b></b> 5
Media End : On	-	Adjust	Contour Cutting Position			
Induction . Tour		Print	: Start	•		
Media Information		Setup(P	F) : + 💌 0 , 0 (n	nm] Setup(CR) : +	• 0 .0 (mm)	<del></del> 7
Width : 611	[mm] Thickness	: [170 [um]	Cut Scale			
			Pattern Print : 500	▼ [mm] Star		<u> </u>
Media Type Copy		1-2.	Initial Change : 0	. 0 (mm) Star		1
Copy from	Copy to	Start 2. Conf	im Adjust			
Type 1 (Type1 ) 📃 🕨	•	2.1.	Pattern Print : 500	▼ [mm] Star		<b></b> 1

No.	Name	Description
1	Adjust Print	Perform Bi-D adjustment for the media.
2	Adjust Print(Auto) *1	Automatic Bi-D adjustment of the media.
3	PF Adjust	Perform the paper feed adjustment of the media.
4	PF Adjust(Auto)*1	Automatic paper feed adjustment of the media.
5	Rear/Edge Sensor Calibration *2	Calibrate the rear sensor and the edge sensor for the media being loaded.
6	Adjust Contour Cutting Position Print *1 Prints a pattern for contour cutting position adjustment.	
7	Setup(PF) *1       Sets the PF adjustment value for contour cutting position adjustment.         Setting : -9.9 mm < 0.0 mm > ~ +9.9 mm	
8	3       Setup(CR) *1       Sets the CR adjustment value for contour cutting poladjustment.         3       Setting : -9.9 mm < 0.0 mm > ~ +9.9 mm	
9	Adjust Cut Scale - Initial Adjust Pattern Print *1	Prints a pattern for cut scale initial adjustment. 50 [mm] unit Setting : 100 mm < 250 mm > ~ 500 mm
10	0 Adjust Cut Scale - Initial Adjust Initial change*1 Sets the adjustment value for cut scale initial adjustment. Adjustment value range: ±50.0 [mm] of initial adjustment par in 0.1 [mm] unit Example) When the initial adjustment pattern is 250 [mm] : Adjustment value range 200 [mm] to 300 [mm]	
11	Adjust Cut Scale - Confirm Adjust Pattern Print *1	Prints a pattern for cut scale confirmation adjustment. 50 [mm] unit Setting: 100 mm < 250 mm > ~ 500 mm

NOTE

- \*1 This function is available for XPJ-C641SR-P.
- \*2 This function is available for VJ-628MP,VJ-628X.

# (1) Adjust Print

Perform Bi-D adjustment for the media loaded in the printer.

## 1)Thickness

Specify the media thickness.

	Remote Panel	
	Printer model : VJ-628 Printer Serial No	Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Update
	Status : Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info. Exit
2 <u>3</u>	Status :       Get printer Information: Success         Printer Status       Adjustment         Back       Performs adjustment prints.         Parform the adjustments by your media type.         1.       Media Thickness.         If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.         Media Type : Type1         Thickness :       170 [µm]         2.       Confirmation         Performs confirm adjustment.         Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine adjustment.         Pattern Print :       Statt	
		E 4 V F 4 V V V

No.	Name	Description
1	Next	Go to the Media Setting Menu.
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.
3	Media Type	The Media Type loaded in the printer is displayed.
4	Thickness	Enter the media thickness set in the printer.
5	Set	Set the media thickness to the printer.

# 2) Confirmation

Print the adjustment pattern in the current setting.

Remote Panel	
Printer model : VJ-628 Printer Serial No	Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Upd
Status : Adjustment Print: Started to print patterns	Printer Info. E
Printer Status Adjustment Pr	
Back Next Perform the adjustments by your media type.	
1. Media Thickness	3. Rough Adjustment
Set the media thickness. If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.	Performs rough adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.
Media Type : Type1	2-1. Pattern Print : Start
Thickness : 170 [µm] Set	2-2. Adjustment Value : Set
2. Confirmation	
Performs confirm adjustment.	A 6 V B 6 V C 6 V D 6 V E 6 V F 6 V V V
Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine	
adjustment, if necessary.	4. Micro Adjustment
Pattern Print : Start - 3	Performs fine adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.
	3-1. Pattern Print : Start
	3-2. Adjustment Value : Set
	A 4 - B 4 - C 4 - D 4 -
	E 4 🔻 F 4 👻 🔍 👻

No.	Name	Description
1	Next	Go to the Media Setting Menu.
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.
3	Start	Print the adjustment pattern in the current setting.

# 3) Rough Adjustment

Perform rough adjustment.

emote Panel		
Printer model : VJ-628	Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode
Status: Adjus	tment Print: Started to print patterns	Printer Info.
Printer Status Adjustment int		
	idjustment prints. ie adjustments by your media ty	pe.
1. Media Thickness		3. Bough Adjustment
Set the media thickness. If you do not know the thickne	ss, leave in blank.	Performs rough adjustment. Check the printed result and sel number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patte
Media Type : Type 1	(Type1)	2-1. Pattern Print : Start
Thickness : 280	[um] Set	
2. Confirm Adjustment		2-2. Adjustment Value : Set
	erform rough adjustment or fine	
adjustment,		4. Micro Adjustment
Pattern Print : Sta	nt	Performs fine adjustment. Check the printed result and selec number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patter
		3-1. Pattern Print : Start
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		
	ŢŢŢŢŢŢŢŨŢŨŢŨŢŬŢŬŢŬŢ	- A 3-2. Adjustment Value : Set
	(c) (c) (w) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c)	E 4 - F 4

No.	Name	Description
1	Next	Go to the Media Setting Menu.
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.
3	Start	Print the rough adjustment pattern.
4	Set	Set the adjustment value to the printer after the value change.
5	Adjustment Value	Change each adjustment value.
		*Adjustment patterns and adjustment range vary depending on the
		printer or ink type you use.

# 4) Micro Adjustment

Perform micro adjustment.

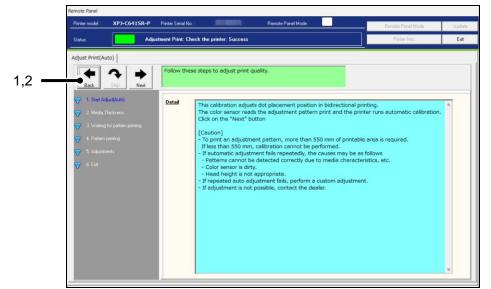
lemote Panel	
Printer model : VJ-628 Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode
Status: Adjustment Print: Started to print patterns	Printer Info.
Printer Status Adjustmer rint	
Performs adjustment prints. Perform the adjustments by your media type.	
1. Media Thickness	3. Rough Adjustment
Set the media thickness. If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.	Performs rough adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.
Media Type : Type 1 ( Type1 )	2-1. Pattern Print : Start
Thickness : 280 [um] Set	2-2. Adjustment Value : Set
2. Confirm Adjustment	
Performs confirm adjustment.	
Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine adjustment,	4. Micro Adjustment
Pattern Print : Start	Performs fine adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.
	3-1. Pattern Print : Start
	3-1. Harrem Print : Start
	3-2 Adjustment Value : Set
7 6 5 4 3 2 1	

No.	Name	Description
1	Next	Go to the Media Setting Menu.
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.
3	Start	Print the rough adjustment pattern.
4	Set	Set the adjustment value to the printer after the value change.
5	Adjustment Value	Change each adjustment value.
		*Adjustment patterns and adjustment range vary depending on the
		printer or ink type you use.

## (2) Adjust Print (Auto)

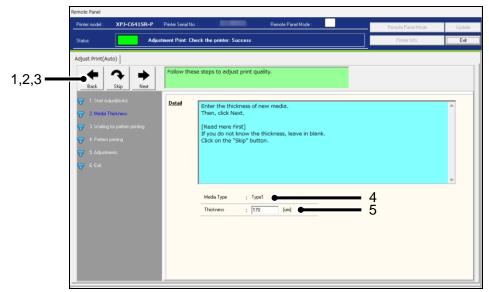
Automatically perform Bi-D adjustment for the media loaded in the printer.

## 1)Start Adjust(Auto)



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.
2	Next	Start automatically perform Bi-D adjustment

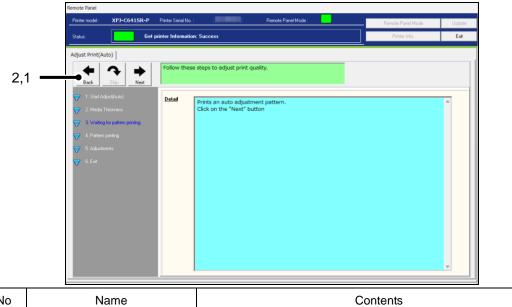
## 2)Media Thickness



No	Name	Contents
1	Back	Start "Adjust(Auto)".
2	Skip	The printer moves to pattern printing without changing the settings.
3	Next	Set the printer to the changed "Media Thickness".
4	Media Type	Displays the currently set "Media Type".
5	Thickness	Sets the thickness of the media being loaded.

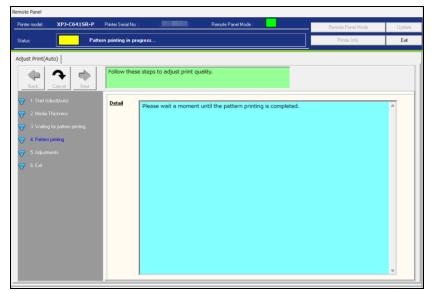
## 3)Waiting for pattern printing

Prints an auto adjustment pattern.

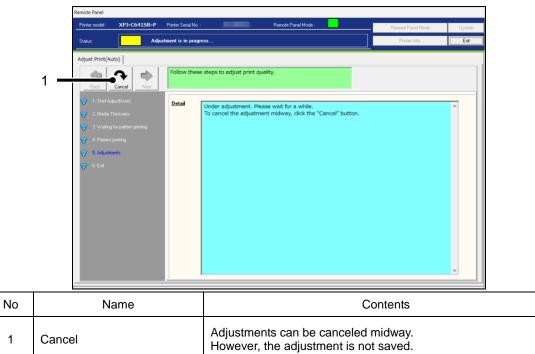


No	Name	Contents
1	Next	Prints an auto adjustment pattern.
2	Back	Go back to "Media Thickness" of the menu.

### 4)Pattern printing



# 5)Adjustments



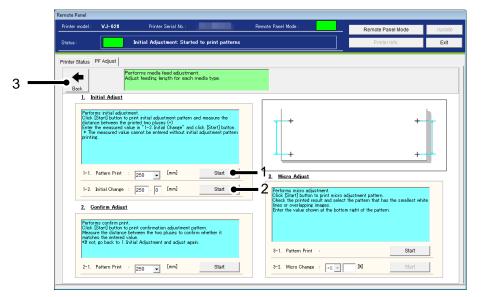
#### (3) PF Adjust

Perform the paper feed adjustment.

#### 1) Initial Adjust

Performs initial adjustment.

Click [Start] button to print initial adjustment pattern and measure the distance between the printed two pluses (+)



No.	Name	Description
1	Pattern Print - Start	Print the initial PF adjustment pattern.
		Pattern length : 100 [mm] ~ < 250 [mm] > ~ 500 [mm]
		(in increments of 50 [mm])
2	Initial Change - Start	Set the initial PF adjustment value to the printer.
		Adjustable range : $\pm$ 50.0 [mm] from the initial PF adjustment
		pattern (in increments of 0.1[mm]).
		e.g.) If the initial PF adjustment pattern is set to 250[mm], the
		adjustable range will be 200 [mm] ~ 300 [mm].
3	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

# 2)Confirm Adjust

Performs confirm print.

Click [Start] button to print confirmation adjustment pattern.

	Panel	
Printe	er model : VJ-628 Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Upda
Status	s: Initial Adjustment: Started to print pat	Printer Info. Exit
Printer	r Status PF Adjust Performs media feed adjustment.	
	Adjust feeding length for each media type.	
	Performs initial adjustment.           Option         Initial adjustment to attern and measure the distance between the printed two places (c)           Enter the measured value (c)         The measure the printed two places (c)           Enter the measured value cannot be entered without initial adjustment payrenting         The measure the printed two places (c)           1-1. Pattern Print :         250 y         [mm]         Start           1-2. Initial Change :         [250]         [mm]         Start	ton
	2. Confirm Adjust Performs confirm print. Click: Start Button to print confirmation adjustment pattern. Measure the distance between the two pluses to confirm whether it matches the entered value.	Check the printed result and select the pattern that has the smallest white lines or overlapping indices. Enter the value above at the bottom right of the pattern.
	matches the entered value. *If not, go back to 1. Initial Adjustment and adjust again.	8-1. Pattern Print : Start

No.	Name	Description
1	Pattern Print - Start	Print the PF adjustment pattern with current setting.
		Pattern length : 100 [mm] ~ < 250 [mm] > ~ 500 [mm]
		(in increments of 50 [mm])
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

# 3) Micro Adjust

Performs micro adjustment.

Click [Start] button to print micro adjustment pattern.

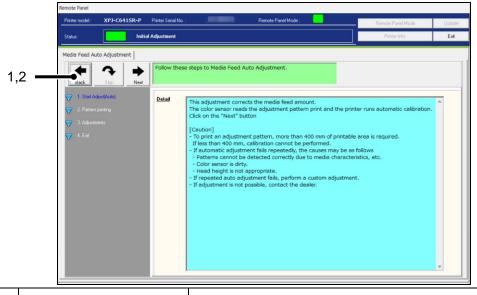
Printer mode	U: VJ-628	Printer Serial No.:		Remote Panel Mode :		Remote Panel Mode
Status :	Mi	icro Adjustment: Starte	ed to print patterns			Printer Info.
Printer Statu	ter Status PF Adjust  ter Status Performs media feed adjustment. Adjust feeding tensth for each media type.  I. Initial Adjust  Performs initial adjustment. Click Efset Date to be performial adjustment pattern and measure the					
Back	r Status PF Adjust     Performs media leed adjustment.     Adjust teeding, length for each media type.     Book     Initial Adjust     Performs initial adjustment.     Olick (Stard Juston to print initial adjustment pattern and measure the     distance between the printed two puses ( )         " me measure divide carried two puses ( )         " The measure divide carried the entered without initial adjustment pattern     printe.     1-1. Pattern Print : 250  [mm] Start	nt. media type.				
L	Performs media feed adjustment. Adjust feeding length for each media type. <b>J. Initial Adjustment</b> . Circle Start Duttion to primed two pluses (*) Enter the measured value of "2.2 Initial Adjustment pattern and measure the Enter the measured value of "2.2 Initial Adjustment pattern priming.					
CI dis En *	Initial Adjust     Performs initial adjustment     Oits, [Ster] button to prime initial adjustment pattern and measure the     Oits, [Ster] button to prime thee place; (i)     Enter the measured value initial adjustment pattern     Prime measured value carnot be entered without initial adjustment pattern     primite.		and measure the I click [Start] button. ial adjustment pattern	Nict adequate -0.20 -0.50	Not adequate	
				+1.20 +0.60 +0.50		000 -0.10 -0.20 -0.50 -0
1-	1. Pattern Print : 2	50 <b>v</b> [mm]	Start			<b>3</b> 33 -0.20 -0.20 -0.60 -0
	<sup>2</sup>	50		3. Micro Adjust	•0.20 •0.10 S	
1-	2. Initial Change : 2	50		3. Micro Adjust	ent. rint micro adjust and select the res.	ment pattern. attern that has the smallest /
2. Pe Cite Market	2. Initial Change : 2 Confirm Adjust rforms confirm print. rick [Start] button to print assure the distance between sches the entered value.	50 0 [mm]	Start	2. Micro Adjust     Creation of the part of the p	ent. rint micro adjust and select the res.	ment pattern. attern that has the smallest /
2. Pe Cite Market	2. Initial Change : 2 Confirm Adjust rforms confirm print. rick [Start] button to print assure the distance between sches the entered value.	50 0 [mm]	Start	2. Micro Adjust     Creation of the part of the p	ent. rint micro adjust and select the res.	ment pattern. attern that has the smallest /

No.	Name	Description
1	Pattern Print - Start	Print the PF adjustment pattern with current setting.
2		Set the micro adjustment value to the printer.
	Micro Change - Start	Adjustable range: $\pm$ 5.00 [%] from the initial PF adjustment
		pattern (in increments of 0.01[%]).
3	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

### (4) PF Adjust(Auto)

Automatically perform paper feed adjustment for the media loaded in the printer.

# 1)Start Adjust(Auto)

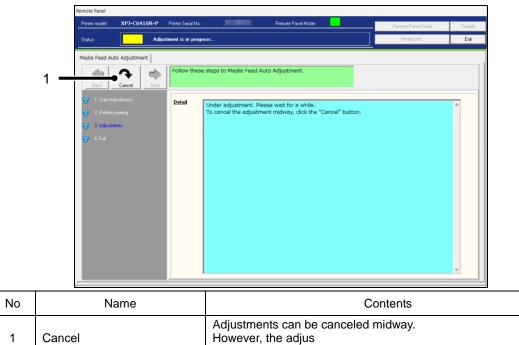


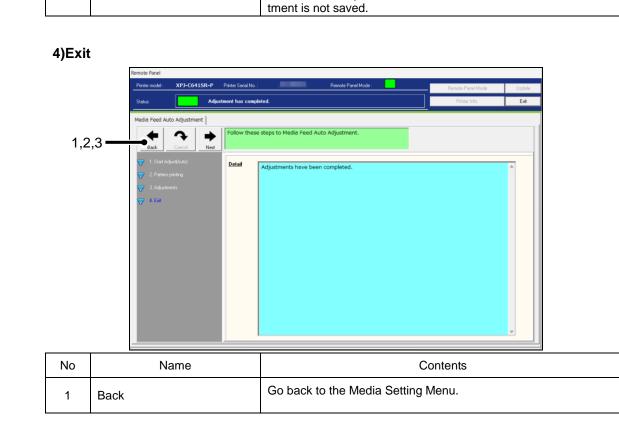
No	Name	Contents
1	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.
2	Next	Start automatically perform paper feed adjustment

### 2)Pattern printing

Printer model :	XPJ-C641SR-P	Printer Serial N	lo.: ( <b>1997)</b>	Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status:	Prin	nting of "Auto P	F adjustment Patterns" has s	tarted.	Printer Info.	Exit
1edia Feed Au	to Adjustment					
<b>e</b> Back	Cancel		ese steps to Media Feed A	uto Adjustment.		
<ul> <li>✓ 2 Patien</li> <li>✓ 3 Adjustm</li> <li>✓ 4 Exit</li> </ul>		Detai	Please work a moment	until the pattern printing is com	pietea.	r. V

## 3)Adjustments





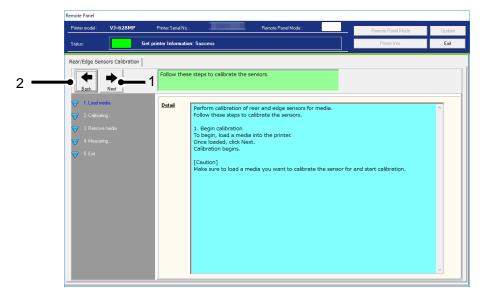
#### (5) Rear/Edge Sensor Calibration

Calibrate the rear and edge sensors.

#### 1)Load media

Load a media to be calibrated in the printer.

Once loaded, click [Next]. The printer will begin the calibration.



No.	Name	Description
1	Next	Start the calibration.
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

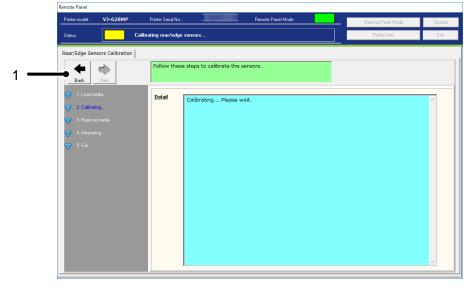
# NOTE

Make sure that the media to be calibrated is loaded in the printer before starting calibration.

#### 2) Calibrating

Calibration is being performed. Please wait until completed.

If failed, the calibration will end and the display will go to 5).



No.	Name	Description
		Go back to the Media Setting Menu.
1	Back	The printer processing will be interrupted. To resume, select
		"Rear/Edge Sensor Calibration" in the Media Setting menu.

If an error occurred, calibration will stop and the details of error will be displayed.

To continue the calibration, clear the error.

Calibration may fail depending on the error timing.

Follow th	ese steps to calibrate the sensors.	
<u>Detail</u>	Calibration was interrupted. Check the followings. - Close the Front Cover.	

NOTE

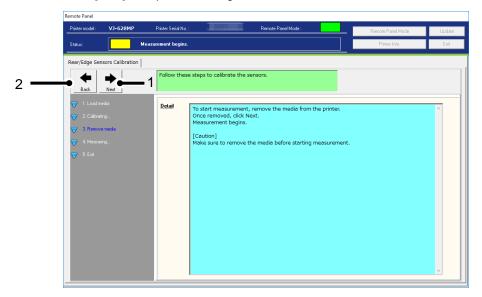
- The following problems can lead to calibration failure:
- An error occurred during the calibration.
- Unable to detect media.
- Printer failure.

Please contact the local MUTOH dealer.

#### 3) Remove Media

To start measurement, remove the media.

Once removed, click [Next]. The printer will begin the measurement.



No.	Name	Description
1	Next	Start measuring.
		Go back to the Media Setting Menu.
2	Back	The printer processing will be interrupted. To resume, select
		"Rear/Edge Sensor Calibration" in the Media Setting menu.

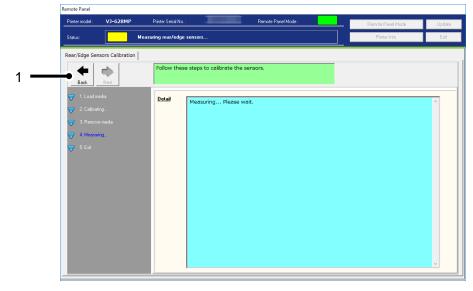
### NOTE

Make sure to remove the media before start measurement.

#### 4) Measuring

Measurement is being performed. Please wait until completed.

If failed, the measurement will end and the display will go to 5).



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

If an error occurred, measurement will stop and the details of error will be displayed.

To continue the measurement, clear the error.

Measurement may fail depending on the error timing.



#### NOTE

- The following problems can lead to measurement failure:
- An error occurred during measurement.
- Printer failure.

Please contact the local MUTOH dealer.

### 5)Exit

The measurement process is completed.

Click [Next] to go back to the Media Setting menu.

ter model : VJ-628MP	Printer Serial N	o.:	Remote Panel Mode :		Remote Panel Mode	Update
tus:	Measurement has	completed.			Printer Info.	Exit
r/Edge Sensors Calibration						
Back	- 1	ese steps to calibra	te the sensors.			
1. Load media	<u>Detail</u>	Measurement h	nas completed.			^
		Click Next to go	back to the Media Setting me	nu.		
5. Exit						
						<u> </u>

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

#### 13.1.4.4. Media Information

Check and change the width and thickness of the media set in the printer.

	ote Panel			_
	inter model : Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	:	Remote Panel Mode	
s	atus: Get printer Information: Success		Printer Info.	
Pr	nter Status   Printer Control   Media Setting   Contour Cutting Settings   Advanced Setting   Other	r Setting		
	Media Type			
	Media Type : Type 1 (Type 1) 💌 Initialization : Start Add M	fedia :	Start	
	Media Setting Adjust			
	Print Mode : High Speed 💌 Effect : iScreenFineL 💌 Adjust Print	Start	Adjust Print(Auto)	Start
	Vacuum Fan : Low Heater : 🔽 [30 [C] FF Adjust	: Start	PF Adjust(Auto) :	Start
	Side Margin : 15 [mm] Media Initial : Width 💌 Rear/Edge S	Sensor Adjust : Star	t	
	Media End : On	our Cutting Position : Start	1	
	Media Information Setup(PF)	: + •0.0 (mn	n] Setup(CR) : + 💌	0.0
	● Width : [511 [mm] Thickness : [170 [um] . Initial Adju	ıst	- [rmm] Start	1
	Media Type Copy	1.000	• [mm]	_
	Copy from         Copy to         1-2. Initial           Type 1 (Type 1)         V         Start         2. ContimAc	djust	0 [mm] Start	

No.	Name	Description
1	Width	Check and change the width of media.
		When the "Media Initial" is set to "Off", the "Media Width" can be
		changed. When the "Media Initial" is set to other than "Off", the
		media initialization will be performed and the media width will be
		displayed on this menu.
2	Thickness	Check and change the thickness of media.
		After the adjustment, if you enter the different media thickness, the
		printer performs the automatic adjustment according to the
		entered value.

## NOTE

- The automatic adjustment determines the approximation. If you want to perform exactly accurate adjustment, the additional adjustment should be required.
- If you are unsure of the media thickness, but the adjustment print can be performed without the thickness entry.
- To change the setting, change the values or settings and then click [Update] button.
- Multiple settings can be changed at once.

#### 13.1.4.5. Media Type Copy

The selected user type settings can be copied to other user type.

The settings which can be copied are as follows:

Print Mode / Effect / set values for Adjust Print /

PF Adjustment values (initial feeding length/initial adjustment value/micro adjustment value) /

Heater / Vacuum Fan / Media Thickness / Media Setting

	del : VJ-628 Printer Serial No Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Upo
Status :	Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info.	Ð
Printer Status	Printer Control Media Setting Advanced Setting		
Media	Туре		
Media	Type : Type1 - Initialization : Start		
meula	Type : Type1 - Initialization : Start		
	Media Setting		
P	Print Mode : Fine  Fine  Effect : Fine&Fuzz  Adjust Print :	Start	
V	acuum Fan : High 💌 Heater : 🔽 [42] [C] PF Adjust :	Start	
s	Side Margin : 5 [mm] Media Initial : Width 💌		
	Aedia Information		
V	Width : 609 [mm] Thickness : 170 [um]		
	Nedia Type Copy		
	Type1 Copy to		
	Type1 Type2 Start 3		

No.	Name	Description
1	Copy from	The selected Media Type is displayed.
2	Copy to	Select a Media Type that you want to copy to.
		All the Media Types other than the source Media Type can be
		selected.
		e.g.: If "User Type 1" is selected, the available copy destination will
		be User Type 2-10 or ALL.
3	Start	Start copying the setting.

## NOTE

• Once the setting of copy destination is changed, it cannot restore to the original setting.

# 13.1.5 Contour Cutting Settings

Check and change the contour cutting setting set in the printer.

No.	Name	Description
1	Media Type	Check the Medit Type setting set in the printer.
2	Cut Settings	Check and change the Medit Type setting set in the printer.
3	Test Cut	Various "Test cut" are performed.

# NOTE

• This function is available for XPJ-C641SR-P.

### 13.1.5.1. Cut Settings

Check and change the Cut setting set in the printer.



No.	Name	Description
1	Foce	Set the Foce of contour cut setting. Setting : 30 gf ~ < 200 gf > ~ 300 gf
2	Velocity	Set the Velocity of contour cut setting. Setting : 20 mm/s ~ < 150 mm/s >
3	Offset	Set the Offset of contour cut setting. Setting : 0.00 mm ~ < 0.15 mm > ~ 0.50 mm
4	Cut Quality	Set the Cut Quality of contour cut setting. Setting : < Quality > / Production / High Speed
5	Cool Down	Set the Cool Doen of contour cut setting. Setting : < On > / Off

### 13.1.5.2. Test Cut

Check the Cut setting.

er model :										_	Remote Panel Mode	Update
10:			ãet printe	er Information:	Success						Printer Info.	Exit
er Status   I	Printer Con	trol   I	4edia Se	tting Contou	r Cutting Set	tings Advance	d Setting   Other Setting	g				
Media Type	1											
<u>Media Typ</u>	HE :	Туре 1	(Type1)									
Cut Settings							Test Cut					
Force	8	0	[gf]	Velocity	: 150	[mm/s]	Contour-Cut Test		Start		•	
Offset	: 0. [	15	[mm]				-Through Cut Tes	t				
Cut Quality	Qui	ality	Ŧ				Through Cut Test		Start		•	
Cool Down	: On		•				Force		20 0	[gf]	•	
	. [01		_				Cut Length		10 . 0	[mm]	•	
							Spacing		0.1	[mm]	•	

No.	Name	Description
1	Contour Cut Test	Perform a contour-cut test.
2	Through Cut Test	Perform a though-cut test.
3	Foce *1	Set the Foce for through cut test. Setting : 30 gf $\sim$ < 200 gf $>$ $\sim$ 300 gf
4	Cut Length *1	Set the Cut Length for through cut test. Setting : 0.1 mm ~ < 10.0 mm > ~ 100.0 mm
5	Spacing *1	Set the Spacing for through cut test. Setting : < 0.1 mm > ~ 10.0 mm

# NOTE

• Settings are not saved in the printer. Please use RIP to set the settings.

### 13.1.6 Advanced Setting

Check and change the advanced setting set in the printer.

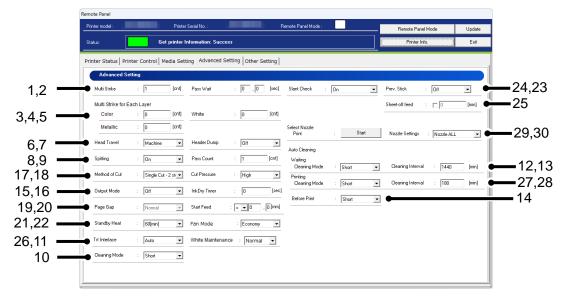
From this menu, user can check the initial printer settings, and initialize the each setting to factory default.

						2
Status:	Get printer	Information: Suc	cess			Printer Info.
Printer Status Pr Advanced S Multi Strike		ting Advanced	Setting Other Setting	Slant Check :	0n 🔻	Prev. Stick : Off
Multi Stike	. I fend	F dss w dk	. 0 ,0 [sec]	Signi Check .	jun 💌	Piev. suck . Uff
Multi Strike for E	Each Layer					Sheet-off feed : 🗖 🛛
Color	: 0 [cnt]	White	: 0 [cnt]			
Metallic	: 0 [cnt]			Select Nozzle Print	Start	Nozzle Settings : Nozz
Head Travel	: Machine 💌	Header Dump	: Off 💽	Auto Cleaning		
Spitting	: On 💌	Pass Count	: 1 [cnt]	Waiting Cleaning Mode	Short 💌	Cleaning Interval : 1
Method of Cut	Single Cut - 2 st	Cut Pressure	High 💌	Printing Cleaning Mode	: Short 💌	Cleaning Interval : 1
Output Mode	: Off 💌	InkDry Timer	: 0 [sec	Before Print	: Short •	
Page Gap	: Normal 💌	Start Feed	: + 🕶 0 . 0 [mm]			
Standby Heat	60(min) 💌	Fan Mode	Economy	-		
Tit Interlace	Auto 💌	White Mainter	nance : Normal 💌			
Cleaning Mode	Short 💌					

No.	Name	Description
1	Advanced Setting	Check and change the advanced setting set in the printer.

#### 13.1.6.1. Advanced Setting

Check and change the advanced setting set in the printer.



No.	Name	Description
1	Multi Strike	Set the overwrite count per line. Setting: <1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt
2	Pass Wait	Set the waiting time while overwrite printing. Setting: < 0.0 sec > ~ 0.1 sec ~ 5.0 sec Use this setting when you want to print on the narrow media or the heater is unable to sufficiently warm up the media.
3	Multi Strike for Each Layer (Color) *5	Set the overwrite count for layer printing (Color) per line. Setting : <1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt
4	Multi Strike for Each Layer (White) *5	Set the overwrite count for layer printing (White) per line. Setting : <1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt
5	Multi Strike for Each Layer (Metalic) *6	Set the overwrite count for layer printing (Metalic) per line. Setting: <1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt
6	Head Travel	Set the range that the print head moves while printing. Setting : Data / Machine / < Media Width >
7	Header Dump	Set whether to print the following information (dump data) of print data. The dump data will be used as a reference material to receive technical supports.
8	Spitting	Set the spitting operation while printing. Setting : < On > / Off

No.	Name	Description
9	Pass Count	Set the frequency (Pass Count) that the print head returns to the spitting box (located) on the origin side when setting "On" or "On Media" in the Spitting menu. Setting : <1 Cnt > ~ 999 Cnt
10	Cleaning Mode *10	Select the cleaning mode for auto cleaning and sleep mode. Setting : short / < Normal > / Long
11	White Maintenance *7	Check and change the White Maintenance in the printer. Setting : < Normal > / Little
12	Auto Cleaning - Wait Time	Set the time for auto-cleaning in WaitingTime mode. VJ-628/628X: Setting : Off ~ 10 min ~ < 360 min > ~ 1440 min VJ-628MP: Setting : <off> ~ 10 min ~ 360 min ~ 1440 min</off>
12	Auto Cleaning - Wait Time - Cleaning Mode *9	Select the cleaning mode for auto cleaning of wait time. Setting : off / short / Normal / Long / < Flushing >
13	Auto Cleaning - Printing Time	Select the time for auto-cleaning while printing. VJ-628/628X: Setting : < Off > ~ 5 min ~ 180 min VJ-628MP: Setting : 5 min ~ < 360min> ~ 1440 min
13	Auto Cleaning - Wait Time - Cleaning Interval *9	Select the time for auto-cleaning cleaning interval. Setting : 10 min ~ < 180min> ~ 1440 min
14	Auto Cleaning - Before Print	Set the value for auto-cleaning in pre-printing mode. Setting : < Off > / On XPJ-C641SR-P Setting : < Off > / short / Normal / Long
15	Output Mode	Set the media operation after printing. Setting : < Off > / Take-up *1 / Auto Cut
16	InkDry Timer	Set the ink drying time. Setting : < 0 sec > ~ 3600 sec (60 min)
17	Method of Cut *2	Set the media cutting operation after printing. Setting : SingleCut-2 steps / < SingleCut-3 steps > / DoubleCut-2 steps / DoubleCut-3 steps
18	Cut Pressure	Set the media cutting pressure for the cutting operation. Setting : Low / < High >
19	Page Gap *4	Set the margin between images. Setting : < Normal > / Narrow
20	Start Feed	Set the media feed amount at print start. Setting: -10.0mm ~ < 0 mm > ~ 500.0mm Unit : 0.1mm

No.	Name	Description
21	Standby Heat	Set the time to preheat the heater while the printer is n standby mode. VJ-628/628X/XPJ-C641SR-P: Setting : Off ~ 10 min ~ < 60 min > VJ-628MP: Setting : Off ~ 10 min ~ < 60 min > ~ 2 hour ~ 8 hour
22	Fan Mode	Set whether to operate the suction fan during standby heating. Setting : < Standard (On) > / Economy (Off)
23	Prev. Stick *3	Set to prevent media from sticking when printing starts. Setting : < Off > / On
24	Slant Check	Set the slanting detection during media loading. Setting : Off / < On >
25	Sheet-off feed	Specify the amount of roll media feeding before cut. Setting : $< Off > \sim 1 \text{ mm} \sim 250 \text{ mm}$
26	Frt Interlace *8	Check and change the Front Interlace the printer. Setting : Off / < Auto >
27	Auto Cleaning - Printing Time - Cleaning Mode *9	
28	Auto Cleaning - Printing Time - Cleaning Interval *9	
29	Select Nozzle – Print *9	Print the nozzle select pattern.
30	Nozzle Settings *9	Check and change the nozzle settings in the printer. Setting: < Nozzle All > / Nozzle A / Nozzle B / Nozzle C / Nozzle D / Nozzle E / Nozzle F

#### NOTE

- If the previous version of F/W is installed, the settings may not be properly reflected. Make sure to install the latest F/W.
- \*1 When the take-up unit is not installed, do not set Output mode to "Take-up".
   By doing so, the product will be unable to function properly.
- \*2 When the the media detection is set to "Off", the media cannot be cut automatically.
   Some media may not be cut (cannot be cut at all or cannot be cut finely).
   In such a case, set the "Output Mode menu" to "Off" and cut the media manually.
- \*3 When the Output Mode menu is set to "Take-up", the setting for the Prev. Stick menu is disabled.
- \*4 When the Output Mode menu is set to "Take Up", the Page Gap menu will be available.
- \*5 When the ink set of VJ-628X/628MP contains white ink and the Multi Strike is set to 1 count, the Multi Strike settings for color layer and white layer will be available.
- \*6 When the ink set of VJ-628X contains metallic ink and the Multi Strike is set to 1 count, the Multi Strike setting for metallic layer will be available.

- \*7 The White Maintenance menu is available only when the ink set of VJ-628X contains white ink.
- \*8 This function is available for VJ-628MP
- \*9 This function is available for XPJ-C641SR-P
- \*10 This function is not available for XPJ-C641SR-P

### 13.1.7 Other Settings

User can check the initial printer settings and returns the settings of the printer to default.

Printer Status Printer Control	ledia Setting Advanced	Setting Other Setting				
Init. Setteings			Initialization			C
Language : Japanese	• Length	mm	Туре	:	▼ Start	
Temperature : Celsius (C)	Alert Buzzer	Off				
Network Configuration						
U	pdate	Start				
IP Address : 1111 . 111	N. 9 99. 9 99 🕨 🥤		_			
Subnet Mask : 5596 . 199	N. N M. N M. N M					
Gateway : 1111	1.991.991 🕨 📔					
Roll Length Manage						
Roll Length : Off	✓ Length	: 0 [m]	Print Stop	: Off	Ŧ	•
		. le trat		. 101		

No.	Name	Description
1	Init. Setteings	Initial printer settings including network configuration are displayed.
2	Initialization	Initialize the each setting to factory default.
3	Roll Length Manage	Check and change the Roll Length Manage set in the printer.

#### 13.1.7.1. Init. Settings

User can check the initial printer settings.

Printer model :	Printer Serial N	0. :	Remote Panel Mode :		Remote Pane	Mode
Status:	Get printer Informa	lion: Success			Printer Inf	0.
Printer Status   Printe	er Control   Media Setting   A	dvanced Setting Other Set	ting			
Init. Setteings			Initializatio	n		
Language : Ja	ipanese 💌 Length	mm	• Туре	:	• S	tart
Temperature : Ce	elsius (C) 💌 Alert B	uzzer : Off	3			
Network Configurat	tion					
IP Address	Update	Start				
Subnet Mask	the way was was	Image: A state of the state				
Gateway						
Roll Length Ma	nage					
Roll Length :	Off   Length	: 0	[m] Print Stop	: Off	Y	

No.	Name	Description
1	Language	Check and change the Language in the printer. Setting : < English > / Japanese
2	Length	Check and change the Length in the printer. Setting : < mm > / inch
3	Temperature	Check and change the Temperature in the printer. Setting : < Celsius [C] > / Fahrenheit [F]
4	Alert Buzzer	Check and change the alert buzzer setting. Setting : < On > / Off
5	Network Configuration	Check and change the printer network configuration setting.

# NOTE

• To change the network configuration, use the ValueJet Finder application contained in the bundled CDROM.

#### (1) Network Configuration

Check and change the current network configuration setting of the printer.

Printer Status Printer Control	1edia Setting Advar	iced Setting Other	r Setting				
Init. Setteings				Initializatio	n		
Language : Japanese	- Length	mm	•	Туре	:	•	Start
Temperature : Celsius [C]	Alert Buzzer	Off	•				
Network Configuration							
	Ipdate	Start	1				
IP Address 1998	M. W.M. WM. N.M. D						
Subnet Mask : 111	0.999.999 🕨			<u> </u>	4		
Gateway 1998	0.991.991 D				-		
	· · ·						
Roll Length Manage							
Roll Length : Off	✓ Length	: 0	[m]	Print Stop	: Off	Ŧ	

No.	Name	Description
1	Update	Enable input boxes (4) to enter new setting.
2	Start	Change the network configuration setting.
3	Current network configuration setting	Displays the current network configuration setting.
4	New network configuration setting	Enter the new network configuration setting that you want to change.

## NOTE

- If the older F/W is used, the setting updates may not be reflected. Install the latest F/W.
- If you want to change the network configuration setting of the printer which does not support this function, change the setting using the ValueJet Finder application which comes with the printer.
- If you change the network configuration while printing, you cannot complete printing.
- If unable to communicate with the printer after changing the network configuration, restart your printer. If the communication is still not successful, check the network configuration from VJ Finder.

#### 13.1.7.2. Initialization

Returns the settings of the printer to default.

ote Panel		
nter model : Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
stus: Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info.	Exit
nter Status   Printer Control   Media Setting   Advanced Setting   Other Setting		
Init. Setteings Initialization		
Language : Japanese 💌 Length : mm 💌 Type :	▼ Start	• <u> </u>
Temperature : Celsius (C)  Alert Buzzer : Olf		
Network Configuration		
Update		
IP Address : 1997		
Subnet Mask : 1999		
Gateway : **** • **** • **** •		
Roll Length Manage		
Roll Length : Off Length : 0 [m] Print Stop : Off	Ŧ	

No.	Name	Description
1	Туре	ALL : All settings can be returned to factory default. Media Type : The setting of the Media Type is returned to factory default. Advanced Setting : Advanced setting is returned to factory default. Init. Setting : Initial setting is returned to factory default.
2	Start	Initialize the selected setting to the factory default.

NOTE

• The network configuration cannot be initialized.

To change the network configuration, use the ValueJet Finder application contained in the bundled CDROM.

#### 13.1.7.3. Roll Length Manage

Check and change the Roll Length Manage set in the printer.

Remote Panel Printer model :	XPJ-C641SR-P	hinter Serial No. :		Remote Panel Mode :		
Status:		has been cance	lled.			Remote Panel Mode
Printer Status	Printer Control   Media	Setting Contou	r Cutting Settings   Ac	vanced Setting Other S	etting	
Init. Setteir	gs			Initialization	1	
Language	English 💌	Length	mm	<b>г</b> Туре	:	Start
Temperatur	e : Celsius [C]	Alert Buzzer	0n -	•		
Network Co	nfiguration					
IP Address	Update		Start			
Subnet Mask	255.255.25	5.0 ⊳				
Gateway		. 🕨				
Roll Long	th Manage					
<ul> <li>Roll Length</li> </ul>	Off	▼ Length	: 0	[m] Print Stop	: Off	Ŧ
Print	Print	Pre-Print Cut	Off	· Auto Scan	Off	•
	Start			Auto Print	: Off	•
Scan	; Start					
		-				

No.	Name	Description
1	Roll Length	Set the roll media length. Setting : < Off > / Roll1 / Roll2 / Roll3
2	Length *1	Set the roll media length. Setting : 1 m ~ < 30 m > ~ 200 m
3	Print Stop *2	Specify whether to stop printing when the roll media is 0[m]. Setting: < Off > / On
4	Print *3	Sets the pattern printing type for roll Length management. Setting : < Print > / Simple Print
5	Pre- Print Cut *3	Set whether to cut the media before printing patterns. Setting: < Off > / On
6	Auto Scan *3	Set the automatic scan setting for roll length management. Setting : < Off > / On
7	Print – Start *3	Prints a pattern for roll length management.
8	Auto Print *3	Sets up automatic printing of patterns. Setting : < Off > / On
9	Scan *3	Scan a pattern for roll length management.

# NOTE

• \*1 After replacing the roll media, set the roll media length again.

If the roll media length is not set, the residual quantity of roll media may not be displayed correctly.

- \*2 The Print Stop menu is available when the Roll Length menu is set to either of Roll1, Roll2 or Roll3.
- \*3 This function is available forXPJ-C641SR-P.

#### 13.1.8 Plug Lifetime

Check and initialize the plug lifetime counter on the high-capacity ink pack adaptor.

#### 13.1.8.1. Reset Plug Lifetime Counter

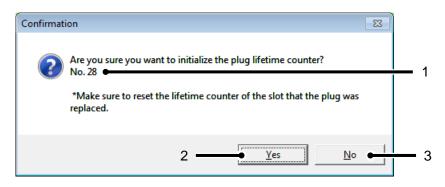
	VJ-628	Printer Serial No		Remote Panel Mode :	Re	mote Panel Mode	Update
Status :		Get printer Information: Succes	s			Printer Info.	Exit
Printer Status   F	Printer Control	Media Setting Advanced Setting Plu	g Lifetime				
	for the certa Check the pl counter with [How to ress 1) Choose th 2) Click on th [Precautions - Make sure - The plug lif - Using the p	lacement on the high-capacity ink in number of times. Up (lifetime counter to see if a plug is teps below. at the lifetime counter] es slot number that the plug was ra e Reset Counter button to initializ i] to reset the lifetime counter of the letime counter of the slot that the initiater without replacing plug can c tition on how to replace plug, see t	needs to be eplaced. e the counte slot that the nigh-capacit cause ink leal	replaced. After replacing, reset th r. : plug was replaced. y ink pack adaptor is loaded can b cage.	e resettable.	📩 : Availab	nd of life
	□ 1	: <b>* * * *</b> *	□ 5	: 🗙 🏫 🚖 😭			
	● 🗹 2	*****	□ 6	· ☆☆☆☆☆			
	□ 3	:	□ 7	_ : ★★★☆☆		Reset Counter	

No.	Name	Description
1	Plug Lifetime	Indicate the plug life status of each slot. *Only when the high-capacity ink pack adaptor is loaded, the status bar is enabled. : No adaptor loaded : Available(100~81%) : Available (80~61%) : Available (60~41%) : Available (40~21%) : Near end of life (20%~1%) : End of life (0%)
2	Reset Counter	Initialize the plug lifetime counter of the selected slot.

## NOTE

- If no high-capacity ink pack adaptor is loaded, this menu will not be displayed.
- For information on how to replace the plug, see the High-Capacity Ink Pack Adaptor Operation Manual.

#### 13.1.8.2. Confirmation



No.	Name	Description
1	Slot No.	The slot number of the plug lifetime counter to be initialized is displayed.
2	Yes	Initialize the counter.
3	No	Cancel the initialization.

# 13.2. VJ-1x38(W)X/1x24(W)X/1628X/2638X/1938TX/1638UH(2)/ 1948WX/1324XS/1638UR(2)/162xMH

#### 13.2.1 Remote Panel

Check the printer information and the remote panel status.

Printer model : VJ-2638X	Printer Serial No Remote Panel Mod Get printer Information: Success	e:	Remote Panel Mod Printer Info.	le Update Exit
Status :	Get printer Information: Success		Printer Info.	Exit
Printer Status Settings Print	er Control			
Status Information		Printer Control		
Auto Printer Information Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM 2015-06-29 14:21		$\bigcirc$		
		Print Cancel	Media Cut	Nozzle Check
		Sleep Mode		
		Enter	Start	
		Cleaning Timer	6 [h] 💌	
Ink Information				
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8			

No.	Name	Description	
1	Printer model	The selected printer model is displayed.	
2	Printer Serial No.	The serial number of selected printer is displayed.	
3	Remote Panel Mode(Status)	Displays current remote panel mode from: Remote Panel Mode On Remote Panel Mode Off	
4	Status	The remote panel status is displayed.	
5	Remote Panel Mode Button	Enable/Disable remote panel mode.	
6	Update	Change the printer settings.	
7	Printer Information button	Get current panel setting information from your printer. *Printer information of the selected tab is obtained.	
8	Exit button	Exit the Remote Panel menu.	

#### 13.2.2 Printer Status

Displays the printer status and remotely operate the printer.



No.	Name	Description
1	Status Information	The current printer status is displayed. If the printer encounters a system error, a workaround will be displayed.
2	Ink Information	The remaining ink amount of the printer is displayed. For the details of S/C card recovery, see 7.7.2 S/C Card Recovery.
3	Printer Control *1	Remotely perform the following operations: • Print Cancel • Media Cut • Nozzle Check
4	Sleep Mode	Remotely switch the printer to Sleep Mode.
5	Auto Printer Information	Check this box to automatically get printer information. On : Enable Off : Disable *This function is not available when MSM is launched from the Windows printer driver.
6	Interval	When "Auto Printer Information" is ON, set a time interval to get the latest information from the printer. Value can be set from: <60[sec]> / 30[ sec] / 10[ sec] / 3[ sec]
7	Status Only	Check this box to obtain the printer status information only to minimize the data acquisition time. *This check box is enabled when "Auto Printer Information" is set to ON.

NOTE

• \*1 Available functions vary by printer model.

#### 13.2.3 Settings

Check and change the printer setting.

Pri	nter model : VJ-	2638X Print	er Serial No		R	emote Panel Mode :		Remote Panel Mode		Upda
Sta	itus :	Get printer	r Information: Su	ccess				Printer Info.		Exit
Prin	ter Status Setting	IS Printer Control								
	1. 1.Setting									
	1. Media Type	Type 1 ( Type1 )	•			15. Auto Cleaning				
	1. Print Mode	G2 -	- Effect	Fine&Fog	•	1. Wait Time	: 🔽 360 [min]	3. Before Print	Off	
	4. Pre Heater	: 🗖 🛛 🖸	5. Platen Heater	: 🗖 🔍	[C]	2. Printing Time	: 🗖 🛛 [min]			
	6. Dryer	: 🗆 0 [C]	7. Vacuum Fan	High	•	13. Strike Wait	:0.0 [sec]	14. Slant Check	Off	
<b>-</b>	2. Spitting	: On 💌	- Pass Count	: 1	[cnt]	17. Roll Length	: Off 💽	- Length	: 0	Į.
	3. <u>Side Marqin</u>	: 5 [mm]				18. Exhaust Fan	Low 💌			
	4. Media Initial	Off 💽	5. Width	: 2642	[mm]	23. IP Address	:	24. Subnet Mask		
	6. Output Mode	Take Up 💌	- InkDry Timer	: 0	[sec]	25. Gateway		26, Header Dump	Off	
	7. Method of Cut	Single Cut - 3 💌	- Cut Pressure		-	27. Single Head	Cff 💽	28. Heater Control	EcoMode	
	9. Prev. Stick	: off	10. Standby Heat	1	[min]	Initializatio	n			
	11. Head Travel	Media 💌	12. Multi Strike	: 1	[cnt]	Type :	ALL	▼ Start	-	
	7. 7.Display									
	1. Language :	English	2. Temperature	Celsius IC		3. Length	mm	4. Remain Ink :	011	

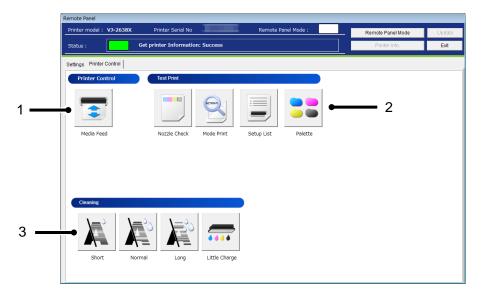
No.	Name	Description
1	Setting	Displays the panel setting in your printer. *Panel setting to be displayed varies depending on printer model.
2	Display	Displays the panel display setting in your printer. *Panel display setting to be displayed varies depending on printer model.
3	Initialization	Initialize the each setting to factory default.

## NOTE

• Available functions vary by printer model.

### 13.2.4 Printer Control

Remotely operate the printer.



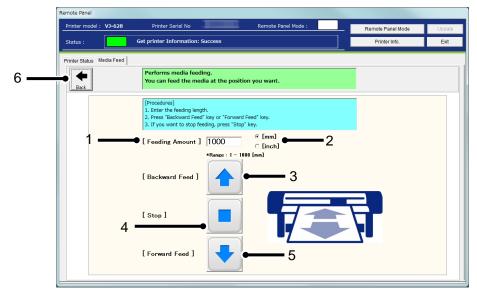
No.	No. Name Description	
1	Printer Control	Remotely operate the printer.
2	Test Print	Perform the test print selected from this menu.
3	Cleaning	Perform the cleaning selected from this menu.

#### 13.2.4.1. Printer Control

Remotely operate the printer.

#### (1) Media Feed

Specify the feeding amount of media set in the printer and feed it in forward/ backward with the specified amount.



No.	Name	Description	
1	Feeding Amount	Specify the media feeding amount range between: •In [mm] setting: 1 ~ < 1000 mm > (in increments of 1 mm) •In [inch] setting: 0.04 ~ < 39.37 inch > (in increments of 0.01 inch)	
	Unit of Feeding Amount	Select the unit of feeding amount from: <mm> or inch</mm>	
3	Backward Feed	Feed the media backward with the specified amount.	
4	Stop	Stop the media feeding.	
5	Forward Feed	Feed the media forward with the specified amount.	
6	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.	

<> Default setting

NOTE

• The printer will feed the media according to the setting you specified. Make sure to specify the appropriate amount to prevent unwinding.

### 13.2.4.2. Test Print

Perform the test print selected from the menu.

note Panel						
rinter model : VJ-2638X	Printer Serial No		Remote Pa	anel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
tatus : Get	printer Information	1: Success			Printer Info.	Exit
ettings Printer Control						
Printer Control	Test Print					
Media Feed	Nozzle Check	Mode Print	Setup List	Palette		
	Ī	Ĭ	Ĭ	Ĭ		
	1	2	3	4		
Cleaning						
Short Norma	Long	Little Charge				

No.	lo. Name Description	
1	Nozzle Check	Print the nozzle check pattern.
2	Mode Print	Print the printing conditions.
3	Setup List	Print the current printer setup list.
4	Palette	Print the palette pattern. *In some print modes, this menu is not available.

### 13.2.4.3. Cleaning

Performs head cleaning.

Remote Panel		
Printer model : VJ-2638X Printer Serial No Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status : Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info.	Exit
Settings Printer Control		
Printer Control Test Print		
Media Feed Nozzle Check Mode Print Setup List Palette		
Cleaning		
Short Normal Long Little Charge		
1 2 3 4		

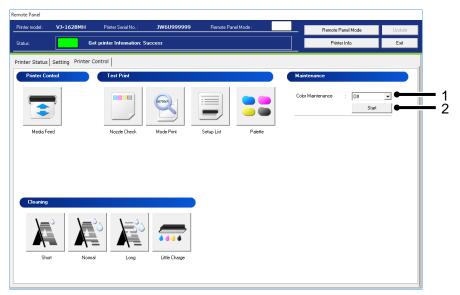
No.	Name	Description
1	Short Cleaning	Discharges smaller amount of ink compared to "Normal".
2	Normal Cleaning	Select this mode normally.
3	Long Cleaning	Discharges larger amount of ink compare to "Normal". Used when the print head does not improve by normal Head cleaning.
4	Little Charge	Refills a small amount of ink. Charge a small amount of ink when printing is not stable after initial ink charge.

## NOTE

• Do not remove ink cartridges/ink bags during cleaning. Air may enter the ink tubes.

#### 13.2.4.4. Maintenance

Remotely perform printer maintenances.



No.	Name	Description
1	Color Maintenance *1	Set the color maintenance. Setting : On / < Off >
2	Color Maintenance Start *1	Perform color maintenance.

### NOTE

\*1 This function is available for VJ-1628MH.

## 13.3. VJ-426UF / 626UF/XPJ-461UF/661UF/1462UF 13.3.1 Remote Panel

Check the printer information and the remote panel status.

Remote Panel					
Printer model :	XPJ-1462UF Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode :	Print:	Remote Panel Moo	<b>le</b> Update
Status:	Get printer Information: Success			Printer Info.	Exit
Printer Status	Printer Control   Media Setting   Advanced Setting	Plug Lifetime		-	
Status Inf			Printer Control		
C Auto Print	nter Information Interval : 60 💌 [sec]	🔲 Status Only			
	Y-MM-DD-HH:MM) Contents				
2023-08-08	08 10:19 No Media				
			Print Cancel	Nozzle Check	Nozzle Check B
			Nozzle Check L		
Ink Inform			01 M1-		
	nation		Sleep Mode		
100	1 2 3 4 5	6	_		
100 -				Dff 🗨	
50		C	leaning Timer	1 [h] 💌	
0 L					

No.	Name	Description	
1	Printer model	The selected printer model is displayed.	
2	Printer Serial No.	The serial number of selected printer is displayed.	
3	Status	The remote panel status is displayed.	
4	Remote Panel Mode(Status)	Displays current remote panel mode from: Remote Panel Mode On Remote Panel Mode Off	
5	Remote Panel Mode Button	Get current panel setting information from your printer.	
6	Update	Change the printer settings.	
7	Printer Information button	Get current panel setting information from your printer. *Printer information of the selected tab is obtained.	
8	Exit button	Exit the Remote Panel menu.	

No.	Name	Description
9	Print *1	Displays Print mode from: indicates that operator is not working on the table. indicates that operator is working on the table.

# NOTE

• \*1 This function is available for XPJ-1462UF.

#### 13.3.2 Printer Status

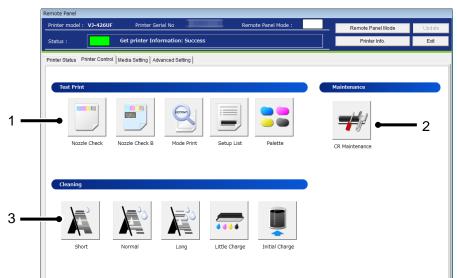
Displays the printer status and remotely operate the printer.

	Remote Panel		
	Printer model : VJ-426UF Printer Serial No Remote Panel M	ode : Remote Panel Mode Update	
	Status : Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info. Exit	
	Printer Status Printer Control   Media Setting   Advanced Setting		
	Status Information	Printer Control	
5,7,8 <b></b> 1 <b></b>	Auto Printer Information Infernal : 50 r [sec] Status Only Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HHMM) Contents 2016-02-23 1026 In sleep mode	Print Cancel Nozzie Check Nozzie Check B	<b>—</b> 3
		Sleep Mode Enter Stop Cleaning Timer Off •	4
	Ink Information	Waste Ink	
2 —		50 - Reset Waste Ink	5

No.	Name	Description	
1	Status Information	The current printer status is displayed. If the printer encounters a system error, a workaround will be displayed.	
2	Ink Information	The remaining ink amount of the printer is displayed. For the details of S/C card recovery, see 7.7.2 S/C Card Recovery.	
3	Printer Control	Remotely perform the following operations: Flat mode : • Print Cancel • Nozzle Check • Nozzle Check Rotary : • Print Cancel	
4	Sleep Mode	Remotely switch the printer to Sleep Mode.	
5	Waste Ink	The amount in the waste ink tank is displayed. The waste ink counter can be reset.	
6	Auto Printer Information	Check this box to automatically get printer information. On : Enable Off : Disable *This function is not available when MSM is launched from the Windows printer driver.	
7	Interval	When "Auto Printer Information" is ON, set a time interval to get the latest information from the printer. Value can be set from: <60[sec]> / 30[ sec] / 10[ sec] / 3[ sec]	
8	Status Only	Check this box to obtain the printer status information only to minimize the data acquisition time. *This check box is enabled when "Auto Printer Information" is set to ON.	

### 13.3.3 Printer Control

Remotely operate the printer.



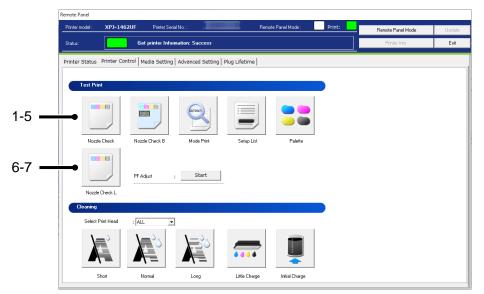
No.	Name	Description	
1	Test Print *1	Perform the test print selected from this menu.	
2	Maintenance *1	Perform the maintenance selected from this menu.	
3	Cleaning	Perform the cleaning selected from this menu.	

### NOTE

• \*1 This function is available for flat mode.

#### 13.3.3.1. Test Print

Perform the test print selected from the menu.



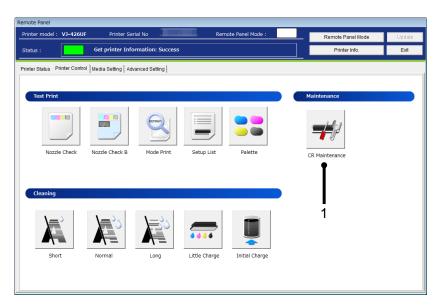
No.	Name	Description	
1	Nozzle Check	Print the nozzle check pattern.	
2	Nozzle Check B	Print the nozzle check B pattern.	
3	Mode Print	Print the printing conditions.	
4	Setup List	Print the current printer setup list.	
5	Palette	Print the palette pattern. *In some print modes, this menu is not available.	
6	Nozzle Check L *1	Print the nozzle check L pattern.	
7	PF Adjust*1	Perform the paper feed adjustment of the media.	

### NOTE

• \*1 This function is available for XPJ-1462UF.

#### 13.3.3.2. Maintenance

Remotely perform printer maintenances.



No.	Name	Description
1	CR Maintenance *1	Remotely perform CR Maintenances.

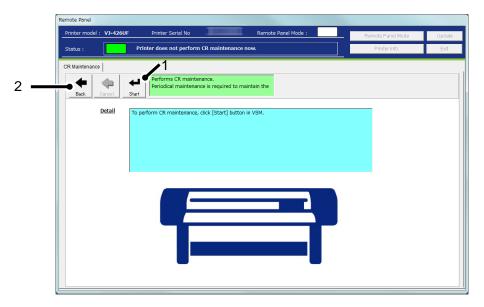
### NOTE

• \*1 This function is available for VJ-426UF.

#### (1) CR Maintenance

### 1) Check Printer Status

Before performing CR maintenance, check the printer status.



No.	Name	Description	
1	Start	Instruct the printer to perform CR Maintenance.	
2	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.	

#### 2) Waiting to press [Operation] button in printer.

Before performing CR maintenance, press Operation key on the printer panel and then start CR maintenance.

emote Panel Printer model : VJ-426UF Printer Serial No	Remote Panel	I Mode :	Danish Danish Maria	
Status : Waiting to press [Operatio	n] button in printer.		Remote Panel Mode Printer Info.	Update Exit
Back Cancel Start Detail Press [Start] button in the print	is required to maintain the			
		-		

No.	Name	Description
1	Cancel	Cancel to perform CR maintenance.



Before starting CR maintenance, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

#### 3) Performing CR maintenance

CR maintenance is being performed in the printer.

After CR maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.

	Remote Panel		
	Printer model : VJ-426UF Printer Serial No Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
	Status : Performing CR maintenance.	Printer Info.	Exit
	CR Maintenance		
	Back Cancel Start Periodical maintenance is required to maintain the		
	Detail Operating time:14[sec]		
	2 — After CR maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.		

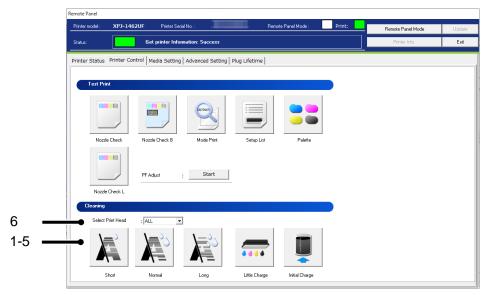
No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
2	Detail	CR maintenance elapsed time is displayed.



After CR maintenance is completed, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

#### 13.3.3.3. Cleaning

Performs head cleaning.



No.	Name	Description
1	Short Cleaning *1	Discharges smaller amount of ink compared to "Normal".
2	Normal Cleaning *1	Select this mode normally.
3	Long Cleaning *1	Discharges larger amount of ink compare to "Normal". Used when the print head does not improve by normal Head cleaning.
4	Little Charge *1	Refills a small amount of ink. Charge a small amount of ink when printing is not stable after initial ink charge.
5	Initial Charge	Perform initial ink charge. Refer to the (1) Initial Charge for the details.
6	Select Print Head *1	Select the print head to be cleaned if the printer has more than one print head. Setting : <all> / Head 1 / Head 2</all>

NOTE

- Do not remove ink cartridges/ink bags during cleaning. Air may enter the ink tubes.
- \*1 Head selection is possible with XPJ-1462UF.

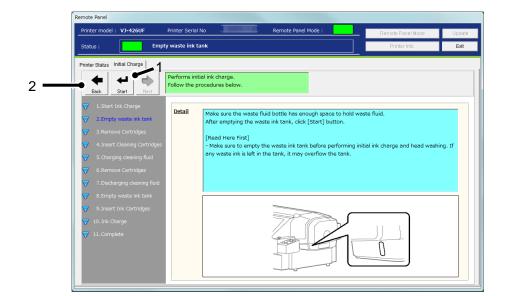
#### (1) Initial Charge

Perform the initial ink charge after ink cartridges are inserted into the correct slots.

#### 1) Empty Waste Ink Tank

Empty the waste ink tank before performing initial ink charge.

After disposing the waste ink, click [Start] button to reset the waste ink counter.



No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Reset the waste ink counter.
2	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

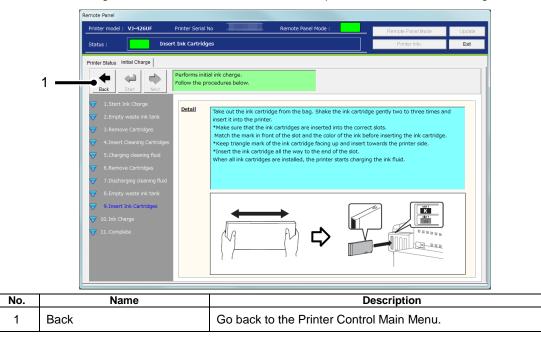
#### NOTE

• Initial charge produces waste ink. Make sure to empty the waste ink tank before performing the initial ink charge. If waste ink is left in the tank, it may overflow the tank.

#### 2) Insert Ink Cartridges

After the counter reset, insert the ink cartridges.

After the ink cartridges are inserted into the correct slots, the printer will start initial ink charge.



#### 3) Ink Charge

The printer is charging inks.

Pri	nter Status Initial Charge				
	Back		ial ink charge. ocedures below.		
		Detail	Initial filling takes about 2.5 minutes. Ink filling operation an	d nause operation are repeated	
	7 2.Empty waste ink tank		during the ink replenishment.		
	3.Remove Cartridges		Please wait.		
	4. Insert Cleaning Cartridges				
	5. Charging cleaning fluid				
	6.Remove Cartridges				
	7.Discharging cleaning fluid				
	8.Empty waste ink tank				
	9.Insert Ink Cartridges				
	7 10. Ink Charge				
	7 11. Complete				

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

### 4) Complete

Initial ink charge has been completed.

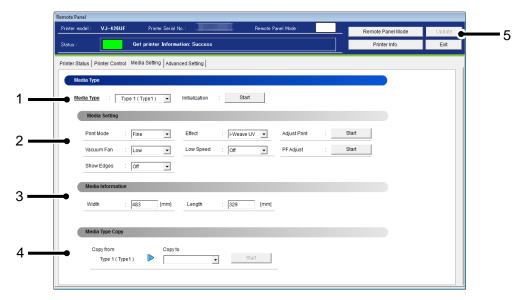
Status : Comple	ted initial ink charge.	Printer Info.	
Printer Status Initial Charge			
	erforms initial ink charge. ollow the procedures below.		
<ul> <li>1.Start Ink Charge</li> <li>2.Empty waste ink tank</li> <li>3.Remove Cartridges</li> <li>4.Insert Cleaning Cartridges</li> <li>5.Charging cleaning fluid</li> <li>6.Remove Cartridges</li> <li>7.Discharging cleaning fluid</li> <li>8.Empty waste ink tank</li> <li>9.Insert Ink Cartridges</li> <li>10. Ink Charge</li> <li>11. Complete</li> </ul>	Detail         Initial ink charge has been completed.           Set the media and perform test printing.		

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

#### 13.3.4 Media Setting

Check and change the media setting.

If you use more than one media, you can store the each media setting including the heater temperature from this menu.



No.	Name	Description
1	Media Type	Check and change the media type loaded in the printer.
2	Media Setting	Check and change the current media setting.
3	Media Information	Check and change the media information set in the printer.
4	Media Type Copy	Copy the current media setting to other Media Type.
5	Update	Change the media setting.

### NOTE

- To change the setting, change the values or settings and then click [Update] button.
- Multiple settings can be changed at once.

# 13.3.4.1. Media Type

Check and change the Media Type loaded in the printer.

									He	ernote Panel Mode	Update
itatus:		Get print	er Informati	on: Success					(	Printer Info.	Exit
rinter Stat	us Printer C	ontrol Media S	etting ) ad	vanced Settin	al						
				Vanicea Decan	al					_	
Media	а Туре										
Media	aType :	Type 1 (Type1)	•	Initialization	Star	t i	Option 1	: Flat m	ode 🛑		_
	Media Setting										
	Heald betting										
_	Print Mode	Fast	*	Effect	: i-Weave L	∨ -	Adjust Print	- ÷	Start		
,	/acuum Fan	Low	-	Low Speed	: Off	•	PF Adjust	:	Start		
-	Show Edges	: Off	-	Obstacle Det	ection : Auto	•	1				
-		10.0			1						
	Media Informa	tion									
,	a∕idth	420	[mm]	Length	: 297	[mm]					
-	Height	: Auto		PG Offset	: 0.0	[mm]					
-											
-	Detailed-Set	: Off	-								
	Media Type	Сору									
	Copy from	I(Type1)	Copy 6			Start					

No.	Name	Description
1	Media Type	Check and change the Media Type loaded in the printer.
2	Initialization	Reset the Media Type currently loaded in the printer.
3	Option 1 *1	Displays the 'Option 1' setting on the printer operation panel. Flat mode : Normal printing mode. Rotary mode: Cylindrical printing mode using Rotary Unit.

### NOTE

- To change the setting, change the values or settings and then click [Update] button.
- \*1 This function is available for VJ-626UF/XPJ-661UF.

#### 13.3.4.2. Media Setting

Check and change the media setting currently loaded in the printer.

	Ren	note Panel										
		rinter model	l:	Printer Se	erial No. :		Remote Par	el Mode :		Remote Panel Mode	Update	
	s	tatus:		Get printer Inf	ormation: Success					Printer Info.	Exit	
	Pr		tatus   Printer Control   Media Setting   Advanced Setting									
		<u> </u>	aType <u>aType</u> : ၂	ype1(Type1)	<ul> <li>Initialization</li> </ul>	: St	art	Option 1	: Flat mode			
			Media Setting									
1,2		-	Print Mode	Fast	Effect	: i-Weave	UV 💌	Adjust Print	Star	• <b></b> 5	5	
3,4		• '	Vacuum Fan	Low	Low Speed	100	•	PF Adjust	Star	• <b></b> 6	5	
7,8 '		<b>-</b> ● _ <sup>≤</sup>	Show Edges	Off	Obstacle De	etection : Au	to 💌	_				
			Media Informatio	n								
		\	Width	: 420 [m	n] Length	297	[mm]	Obs. Check Mode	: High-Acci	ласу 💌		
		ŀ	Height	: Auto	PG Offset	: 0.0	[mm]					
		[			•							
			Media Type Co									
			Copy from Type 1 (		Copy to	•	Start	_				

No.	Name	Description
1	Print Mode	Check and change the Print Mode of the media. Flat mode : Setting : Fast / <fine> / Super Fine Rotary mode : Setting : &lt; Balance &gt; / Fine / Super Fine XPJ-1462UF: Setting : Build Up / <quality> / Production / High Speed / Draft</quality></fine>
2	Effect *1	Check and change the Effect of the media. Setting :None / <i-weave uv=""> XPJ-1462UF : Setting : None / <i-weave ex="" uv=""></i-weave></i-weave>
3	Vacuum Fan *1,2,3	Check and change the vacuum fan of the media. Setting :Low / Medium / Medium-Hi / <high> / Off</high>
4	Low Speed	Check and change the Low Speed setting of the media. Setting : <off> / 50% / 25% XPJ-1462UF : Setting : <off> / 50%</off></off>
5	Adjust Print *1	Perform Bi-D adjustment for the media. * If other than "100%" is selected in "Speed Control", this function is invalid.

No.	Name	Description
6	PF Adjust*1,3	Perform the paper feed adjustment of the media.
7	Show Edges *3	Specify whether to confirm the outer edges (and corners) of the output area by blinking LED. Setting : <off> / Step / Auto</off>
8	Obstacle Detection*1	Check and change the obstacle detection setting applied to the printer. VJ-426UF/XPJ-461UF : Setting : <print cancel=""> / Confirm VJ-626UF/XPJ-661UF: Setting :<auto> / Print Cancel / Confirm XPJ-1462UF: Setting :<off> / Auto / Print Cancel / Confirm</off></auto></print>

### NOTE

- To change the setting, change the values or settings and then click [Update] button.
- Multiple settings can be changed at once.
- If the older F/W is used, the setting updates may not be reflected. Install the latest F/W.
- \*1 This function is available for flat mode.
- \*2 [XPJ-461UF] This function is enabled only when the optional vacuum table is installed in the printer.
- \*3 XPJ-1462UF is not supported

### (1) Adjust Print

Perform Bi-D adjustment for the media loaded in the printer.

#### 1) Confirmation

Print the adjustment pattern in the current setting.

Printer model : XPJ-461UF	Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Upp
Status: Get prin	nter Information: Success		Printer Info.	E
Printer Status Adjustmer int				
Performs ad	ljustment prints. adjustments by your media type.			
1. Confirm Adjustment				
Performs confirm adjustment. Check the printed result and per adjustment, Pattern Print : Star			uuuuu <sup>e</sup>	Pattern n
2. Rough Adjustment		3. Micro Adjustment		
number that has smallest misali	eck the printed result and select the gnment. Id before printing rough patterns.	number that has smallest mis	ck the printed result and select th alignment. red before printing rough patterns	e
The number connoc be encere				
2-1. Pattern Print :	Start	3-1. Pattern Print :	Start	
	Start Set			

No.	Name	Description
1	Next	Go to the Media Setting Menu.
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.
3	Start	Print the adjustment pattern in the current setting.

### 2) Rough Adjustment

Perform rough adjustment.

	Remote Panel	
	Printer model : XPJ-461UF Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Update
	Status: Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info. Exit
2 —	Printer Status Adjustment view Back Performs adjustment prints. Perform the adjustments by your media type. 1. Contine Adjustment Performs confirm adjustment. Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine adjustment, Potern Piret : Start 2. Booch Adjustment	
	Performs rough adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment.       "The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.       2-1. Patem Pint     Start       2-2. Adjustment Value     Start       4     6       •     w       •     w	Performs fine adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment. "The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns. 3-1. Pattern Pirk : Start 3-2. Adjustment Value : Set A 4 w B 4 w C 4 w - w - w - w - w - w

No.	Name	Description
1	Next	Go to the Media Setting Menu.
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.
3	Start	Print the rough adjustment pattern.
4	Set	Set the adjustment value to the printer after the value change.
5	Adjustment Value	Change each adjustment value.
		*Adjustment patterns and adjustment range vary depending on the
		printer or ink type you use.

### 3) Micro Adjustment

Perform micro adjustment.

Printer model :	XPJ-461UF	Printer Serial No. :		Remote Panel Mode :		Remote Panel Mode	Up
Status:	Ge	t printer Information: Su	lccess			Printer Info.	E
Printer Statu							
Back		s adjustment prints. the adjustments by	your media type.				
<u>1. Confirm a</u>	Adjustment						
Perforn Check t adjustn		t. perform rough adjustr	ment or fine				
Patter	Print :	Start					
2. Rough A	djustment			3. Micro Adjustment			
number	that has smallest m	Check the printed resi isalignment. tered before printing re		number that has sm	allest misaligr	the printed result and select ment. before printing rough patte	
2-1. Pa	tem Print ;	Start		3-1. Pattern Print		Start	-3
2-2. Ad	ustment Value ;	Set	]	3-2. Adjustment Va	lue :	Set	<b>-</b> 4
A	▼ B 6	▼ C 6 ▼ -	<b>•</b>		4 -	c 4   -   -	-

No.	Name	Description
1	Next	Go to the Media Setting Menu.
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.
3	Start	Print the rough adjustment pattern.
4	Set	Set the adjustment value to the printer after the value change.
5	Adjustment Value	Change each adjustment value.
		*Adjustment patterns and adjustment range vary depending on the
		printer or ink type you use.

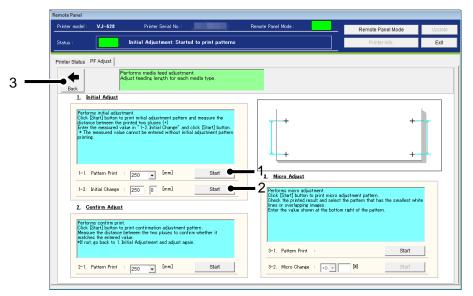
#### (2) PF Adjust

Perform the paper feed adjustment.

#### 1) Initial Adjust

Performs initial adjustment.

Click [Start] button to print initial adjustment pattern and measure the distance between the printed two pluses (+)

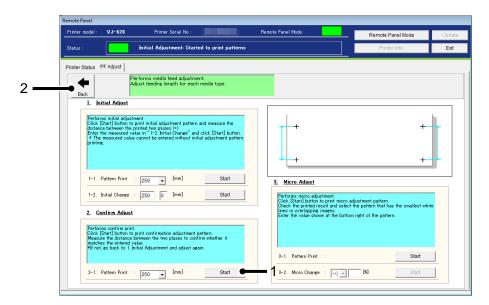


No.	Name	Description
1	Pattern Print - Start	Print the initial PF adjustment pattern.
		VJ-426UF :
		Pattern length : 100 [mm] ~ < 250 [mm] > ~ 300 [mm]
		VJ-626UF :
		Pattern length : 100 [mm] ~ < 250 [mm] > ~ 500 [mm]
		(in increments of 50 [mm])
2	Initial Change - Start	Set the initial PF adjustment value to the printer.
		Adjustable range : $\pm$ 10.0 [mm] from the initial PF adjustment
		pattern (in increments of 0.1[mm]).
		e.g.) If the initial PF adjustment pattern is set to 250[mm], the
		adjustable range will be 240 [mm] ~ 260 [mm].
3	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

### 2)Confirm Adjust

Performs confirm print.

Click [Start] button to print confirmation adjustment pattern.



No.	Name	Description
1	Pattern Print - Start	Print the PF adjustment pattern with current setting.
		VJ-426UF :
		Pattern length : 100 [mm] ~ < 250 [mm] > ~ 300 [mm]
		VJ-626UF :
		Pattern length : 100 [mm] ~ < 250 [mm] > ~ 500 [mm]
		(in increments of 50 [mm])
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

### 3) Micro Adjust

Performs micro adjustment.

Click [Start] button to print micro adjustment pattern.

Printer model :	VJ-628	Printer Serial No.:		Remo	e Panel Mode :		F	Remote Panel N	lode
Status :	Micr	o Adjustment: Star	ted to print patterns					Printer Info.	
Printer Status	PF Adjust								
e e		s media feed adjustm eeding length for eac							
	initial Adjust								
Click dista Enter	orms initial adjustment. : [Start] button to print in nce between the printed r the measured value in " e measured value cannor ing.	twopluses (+) 1-2. Initial Change‴ar	nd click [Start] button.			-0,50 -	0.80	-0.10 -0.23 -	-0.50 -0
					+1.20 +0.80	+0.50 +0.20 +			
1-1.	Pattern Print : 250	• [mm]	Start		3. <u>Micro Adju</u>				
1-2.	Initial Change : 250		Start Start		3. Micro Adju Performs micro Click [Start] bu Check the print lines or overlap	adjustment. tton to print mic ed result and se ping images.	o adjustmen ect the patte	t pattern. Irm that has the s	smallest
1-2.	hitial Change : 250 Confirm Adjust				3. Micro Adju Performs micro Click [Start] bu Check the print lines or overlap	<u>st</u> adjustment. tton to print mic ed result and se	o adjustmen ect the patte		smallest (
1-2. 2. 9 Perfc Click Mess matc	hitial Change : 250 250 250 250 250 250 250 250	. 0 [mm]	Start pattern. nfirm whether it		3. Micro Adju Performs micro Click [Start] bu Check the print lines or overlap	adjustment. tton to print mic ed result and se ping images.	o adjustmen ect the patte		smallest
1-2. 2. 9 Perfc Click Mess matc	Diffial Change : 250 Confirm Adjust pros confirm print. (Start) button to print co ure the distance between	. 0 [mm]	Start pattern. nfirm whether it		3. Micro Adju Performs micro Click [Start] bu Check the print lines or overlap	st adjustment. Iton to print mici d result and se ping images. shown at the bo	o adjustmen ect the patte		smallest Start

No.	Name	Description
1	Pattern Print - Start	Print the PF adjustment pattern with current setting.
2		Set the micro adjustment value to the printer.
	Micro Change - Start	Adjustable range: $\pm$ 5.00 [%] from the initial PF adjustment
		pattern (in increments of 0.01[%]).
3	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

#### 13.3.4.3. Media Information

Check and change the width and thickness of the media set in the printer.

Remote Panel					
Printer model :	Printer Seria	l No. :	Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status:	Get printer Infor	nation: Success		Printer Info.	Exit
Printer Status Pi	inter Control Media Setting	Advanced Setting			
Media Type					
		Initialization Start	Option 1	: Flat mode	
<u>Media Type</u>	Type1(Type1) 💌	Initialization Start	Uption 1	<ul> <li>Flat mode</li> </ul>	
Media	Setting				
Print Mo	de Fast 💌	Effect : i-Weave UV	Adjust Print	Start	
Vacuum	Fan : Low 💌	Low Speed : Off	✓ PF Adjust	Start	
Show E	liges : Off 🗨	Obstacle Detection : Auto	•		
	nformation				
Media	nrormation				
Width	: 420 [mm]	Length : 297	[mm] Obs. Check Mode	: High-Accuracy 💌	2
Height	: Auto	PG Offset : 0.0	[mm] Confirm Height	: Off 💽	2,
Detailed	-Set : Off 💌				
Media	туре Сору	_			
Co		py to	art		
	Type 1 (Type 1)		.dfu		

No.	Name	Description
1	Width	Check and change the width of media.
		VJ-426UF/XPJ-461UF:
		Setting : 30 mm ~ < 483 mm >
		VJ-626UF/XPJ-661UF
		Flat mode :
		Setting : 30 mm ~ < 483 mm >
		Rotary mode : Setting : 30 mm ~ < 360 mm >
		XPJ-1462UF:
		Setting : 30 mm ~ < 1420 mm >
2	Length	Check and change the Length of media.
		VJ-426UF/XPJ-461UF:
		Setting : 30 mm ~ < 329 mm >
		VJ-626UF/XPJ-661UF:
		Flat mode :
		Setting:30 mm ~ < 594 min > Rotary mode:
		Setting : 20 mm ~ < 405 mm >
		XPJ-1462UF:
		Setting : 30 mm ~ < 700 mm >

No.	Name	Description
3	Height *1,2	Check the height setting of media.
		Setting : < Auto > / Manual
4	Roller Pitch *1,3	Check the roller pitch setting.
		Setting : < Wide > / Narrow
5	PG Offset *1,2	Check the PG Offset of media.
	*When "Height" is set to Auto	Setting : < 0.0 mm > ~ 1.5 mm
6	Media Height *1,2	Check the height of media.
	*When "Height" is set to Manual	Setting : < 0.0 mm > ~ 150.0 mm
7	Diameter *1,3	Check the diameter.
		Roller Pitch :
		Wide : Setting : 60.0 mm ~ 125.0 mm
		Narrow : Setting : 27.0 mm ~ 80.0 mm
8	Detailed-Set *1	Check and change the detailed setting of media.
		Setting : Off /< On >
9	Obstacle check mode *4	Check and change the obstacle check mode of media.
		Setting : <normal> / High-Accuracy</normal>
10	Confirm Height *5	Check and change the confirm height of media.
		Setting: < Off > / On

### NOTE

- The automatic adjustment determines the approximation. If you want to perform exactly accurate adjustment, the additional adjustment should be required.
- If you are unsure of the media thickness, but the adjustment print can be performed without the thickness entry.
- To change the setting, change the values or settings and then click [Update] button.
- Multiple settings can be changed at once.
- \*1 This function is available for VJ-626UF/XPJ-661UF/1462UF.
- \*2 This function is available for flat mode.
- \*3 This function is available for rotary mode.
- \*4 This function is available for XPJ-461UF/XPJ-661UF.
- \*5 This function is available for XPJ-1462UF.

#### 13.3.4.4. Media Type Copy

The selected user type settings can be copied to other user type.

The settings which can be copied are as follows:

Print Mode / Effect / set values for Adjust Print / PF Adjustment values / Vacuum Fan / Media Setting

Printer model	VJ-426UF	Printer	Serial No.:		Hei	moté Par	el Mode :	Ren	note Panel Mode	Upo
Status :		Get printer I	nformation: Succe	88					Printer Info.	Ð
Printer Status	Printer Contro	I Media Setting	Advanced Setting							
Media	Type									
			_							
Media	Type : Ty	ype 1 (Type1)	<ul> <li>Initializatio</li> </ul>	a c	Start					
	Nedia Setting									
P	rint Mode	Fine	✓ Effect		i-Weave UV	•	Adjust Print	Start		
					· ·			 		
Va	acuum Fan	Low	▼ Low Spe	: bt	off	•	PF Adjust	 Start		
SI	how Edges	Off	•							
M	edia Information	n								
v	Vidth	: 483 (n	nm) Length		329 [	mm)				
_		. 100 1.			525					
М	edia Type Copy									
	Copy from		Copy to							
	<ul> <li>Type 1 (Typ</li> </ul>	~	Type 2 ( Type2 )	*	Start		<b>—</b> 3			
				_			- 0			

No.	Name	Description
1	Copy from	The selected Media Type is displayed.
2	Copy to	Select a Media Type that you want to copy to.
		All the Media Types other than the source Media Type can be
		selected.
		e.g.: If "User Type 1" is selected, the available copy destination will
		be User Type 2-10 or ALL.
3	Start	Start copying the setting.

### NOTE

• Once the setting of copy destination is changed, it cannot restore to the original setting.

### 13.3.5 Advanced Setting

Check and change the advanced setting set in the printer.

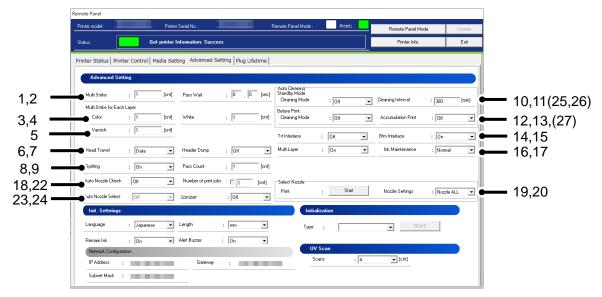
From this menu, user can check the initial printer settings, and initialize the each setting to factory default.

Printer model :	VJ-426UF Prin	ter Serial No.:		Remote Panel Mode	·	Rem	ote Panel Mode	•	Upda
Status :	Get printe	er Information: Suc	cess			F	Printer Info.		Exi
Printer Status   F	Printer Control   Media Setti	ng Advanced Settir	Ig						
Advanced	Setting								
Multi Strike	: 1 [cnt	Pass Wait	: 0.0 [se	c] Auto Cleaning — Waiting	: 🗖 🛛	[min]			
Multi Strike f	or Each Layer : 1 [cnt]	White	: 1 [cnt	Printing	: 🗖 🛛	(min)			
Varnish	: 1 [cnt]		. It four	Before Print	: off	•			
Head Travel	Media 🗸	 Header Dump	Off	Trt Interlace	: On		nterlace :	On	
Spitting	: On 🗸	Pass Count	: 1 [cnt	] Multi Layer	Off	- White	Maintenance :	Normal	
Init. Settin	]\$				nitialization				
- Language	English	- Length	: mm	•	_			Start	
Remain In	k : On	•			Туре :		•	stan	]
Network	Configuration				UV Scan				
IP Addre					Scans	: 4			(
Subnet	Mask :				Post Cure	: Off	•		

No.	Name	Description
1	Advanced Setting	Check and change the advanced setting set in the printer.
2	Init. Setteings	Initial printer settings including network configuration are displayed.
3	Initialization	Initialize the each setting to factory default.
4	UV Scan	Check and change the UV Scan setting set in the printer.

#### 13.3.5.1. Advanced Setting

Check and change the advanced setting set in the printer.



No.	Name	Description
1	Multi Strike	Set the overwrite count per line. Setting : < 1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt
2	Pass Wait	Set the waiting time while overwrite printing. Setting : $< 0.0 \text{ sec} > \sim 0.1 \text{ sec} \sim 5.0 \text{ sec}$
3	Multi Strike for Each Layer (Color)	Set the overwrite count for layer printing (Color) per line. Setting : < 1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt
4	Multi Strike for Each Layer (White)	Set the overwrite count for layer printing (White) per line. Setting : < 1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt
5	Multi Strike for Each Layer (Varnish)	Set the overwrite count for layer printing (Varnish) per line. Setting : <1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt
6	Head Travel	Set the range that the print head moves while printing. Setting : Data / Machine /< Media Width >
7	Header Dump *2	This function is to specify whether to print the following information (dump data) of print data. The dump data will be used as a reference material to receive technical supports. Setting : < Off > / On / DUMP
8	Spitting	Set the spitting operation while printing. Setting :< On > / Off

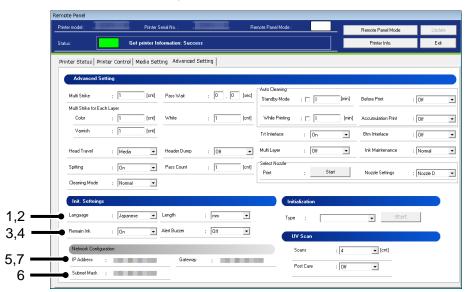
No.	Name	Description
9	Pass Count	Set the frequency (Pass Count) that the print head returns to the spitting box (located) on the origin side when setting "On" in the Spitting menu. Setting : < 1 Cnt > ~ 999 Cnt
10	Auto Cleaning - Wait Time *8	Set the time for auto-cleaning in WaitingTime mode. Setting : <off> ~ 10 min ~ 1440 min</off>
11	Auto Cleaning - Before Print *8	Set the value for auto-cleaning in pre-printing mode. Setting : < Off > / On
12	Auto Cleaning - Printing Time *8	Select the time for auto-cleaning while printing. Setting : < Off > ~ 5 min ~ 180 min
13	Auto Cleaning - Accumulation Paint	Set the time for auto-cleaning in accumulation mode. Setting : <off> ~ 1[h] / 2[h] / 3[h] / 4[h]</off>
14	Top Edge Treatment *1	Check and change the Top Edge Treatment in the printer. Setting : Off / < On >
15	End Edge Treatment *1,6	Check and change the End Edge Treatment Layer in the printer. Setting : Auto / < On >
16	Multi Layer *2	Check and change the Multi Layer in the printer. Setting : < Off > / On
17	White Maintenance *3,8	Check and change the White Maintenance in the printer. Setting : < Normal > / Little
17	Ink Maintenannce *4,5,7	Check and change the Ink Maintenance in the printer. US11/4Color Setting: < Normal > / Long US11/6Color Setting: Little / < Normal > / Long UH21/4Color Setting: Not available (this menu is hidden) UH21/6Color Setting: Little / < Normal >
18	Cleaning Mode *4	Check and change the cleaning mode in the printer. Setting : Short / < Normal > / Long
19	Select Nozzle – Print *2,4,8	Print the nozzle select pattern.
20	Nozzle Settings *2,4,7	Check and change the nozzle settings in the printer. XPJ-1462UF Setting : < Nozzle All > / Nozzle A / Nozzle B / Nozzle C / Nozzle D / Nozzle E / Nozzle F Setting : < Nozzle All > / Nozzle A / Nozzle B / Nozzle C /
		Nozzle D
21	Auto Nozzle Check *7	Check and change the Auto Nozzle Check Treatment in the printer. Setting : < Off > / On
22	Number of print jobs *7	Check and change the Numver of print fobs Treatment in the printer. Setting : < Off > / 1 – 30 [Cnt]

No.	Name	Description		
23	Auto Nozzle Select *7	Check and change the Auto Nozzle Select Treatment in the printer. Setting : Off / < On >		
24	lonizer *7	Check and change the Ionizer Treatment in the printer. Setting : < Off > / On		
25	Auto Cleaning - Standby Mode Cleaning Type *7	Select the cleaning type to be performed automatically during standby mode. Setting : < Off > / Short / Normal / Long		
26	Auto Cleaning - Standby Mode Cleaning Interval *7	Set the time for auto-cleaning in WaitingTime mode. Setting : 10 min ~ < 360min> ~ 1440 min		
27	Auto Cleaning - Before Print Cleaning Interval *7	Set the value for auto-cleaning in pre-printing mode. Setting : < Off > / Short / Normal / Long		

- \*1 This function is available for VJ-426UF.
- \*2 This function is available for flat mode.
- \*3 This function is available for VJ-426UF/626UF.
- \*4 This function is available for XPJ-416UF/661UF.
- \*5 Available settings vary depending on the type of ink and ink configuration in the printer.
- \*6 This function is available for XPJ-416UF.
- \*7 This function is available for XPJ-1462UF.
- \*8 This function is not available for XPJ-1462UF.

#### 13.3.5.2. Init. Settings

User can check the initial printer settings.



No.	Name	Description
1	Language	Check and change the Language in the printer. Setting : < English > / Japanese XPJ-1462UF Setting : < English > / Dutch / Spanish / French / Italian / Portuguese / German / Japanese
2	2 Length Check and change the Length in the printer. Setting : < mm > / inch	
3	Remain Ink	Set whether to display the remaining ink amount. Setting : Off / <on></on>
4	Alert Buzzer	Check and change the alert buzzer setting. Setting : < On > / Off
5	IP Address	Displays the printer IP address.
6	Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask of the printer.
7	Gateway	Displays the gateway of the printer.

- To change the network configuration, use "MUTOH LFP Finder" (bundled application) or set from the printer panel.
- If the older F/W is used, the setting updates may not be reflected. Install the latest F/W.

#### 13.3.5.3. Initialization

Returns the settings of the printer to default.



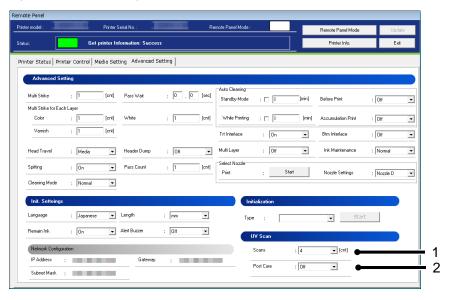
No.	Name	Description
1	Туре	ALL : All settings can be returned to factory default. Media Type : The setting of the Media Type is returned to factory default. Advanced Setting : Advanced setting is returned to factory default. Init. Setting : Initial setting is returned to factory default.
2	Start	Initialize the selected setting to the factory default.

## NOTE

• To change the network configuration, use "MUTOH LFP Finder" (bundled application) or set from the printer panel.

#### 13.3.5.4. UV Scan

Check and change the UV Scan setting set in the printer.



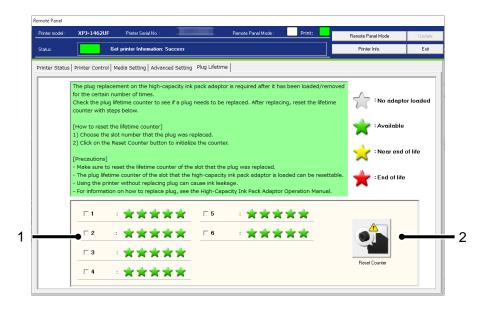
No.	Name	Description
1	Scans	Specify the number of UV scan after printing per 1 inches (in media feeding direction). Setting : $2 / < 4 > / 8 / 16$
2	Post Cure *1	Specify whether to automatically perform the UV curing after printing. Setting: < Off > / On

- If the older F/W is used, the setting updates may not be reflected. Install the latest F/W.
- \*1 This function is not available for XPJ-1462UF.

#### 13.3.6 Plug Lifetime

Check and initialize the plug lifetime counter on the high-capacity ink pack adaptor.

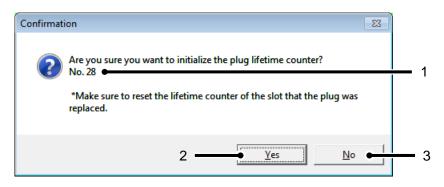
#### 13.3.6.1. Reset Plug Lifetime Counter



No.	Name	Description
1	Plug Lifetime	Indicate the plug life status of each slot. *Only when the high-capacity ink pack adaptor is loaded, the status bar is enabled. : No adaptor loaded : Available (100~81%) : Available (80~61%) : Available (60~41%) : Available (40~21%) : Near end of life (20%~1%) : End of life (0%)
2	Reset Counter	Initialize the plug lifetime counter of the selected slot.

- If no high-capacity ink pack adaptor is loaded, this menu will not be displayed.
- For information on how to replace the plug, see the High-Capacity Ink Pack Adaptor Operation Manual.
- This function is not available for XPJ-1462UF.

### 13.3.6.2. Confirmation



No.	Name	Description	
1	Slot No.	The slot number of the plug lifetime counter to be initialized is displayed.	
2	Yes	Initialize the counter.	
3	No	Cancel the initialization.	

# 13.4. XPJ-1641SR/1682SR/16x2WR/1341xR-P/1641SR-P/ 1682SR-P/1638UR/HA-1642

### 13.4.1 Remote Panel

Check the printer information and the remote panel status.

Semote Panel			×
Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode		
Status: Get printer Information: Succe	*8*	Printer In	fo. Exit
Printer Status Printer Control Media Setting Advanced	Setting		
Status Information		Printer Control	
Auto Printer Information Interval : 60 -	[sec] 🔲 Status Only		
Date(YYYY-HN-DD-HH:HM) Contents			
2019-11-22 09:25 Ready to Print			
		Print Cancel Pausing Print	Nozzle Check
Heater Information			
Heater Set : Temperature :			
Pre : 0 (C) Pre : 14	6 [C] 60 [F] 🕎		
Platen : 🔲 0 [C] Platen : 1	5 (C) 59 (F) 👫 👘	Media Cut	
Dryer : 🗆 🛛 🖸 🖓 Dryer : 1		Media Luk	
	Warm-Up Cancel		
Ink Information	Warm-Up Cancel	Sleep Mode	
1 2 3 4	Warm-Up Cancel	Sleep Mode Enter Start	
		Enter Start	
1 2 3 4		Enter Start	

No.	Name	Description
1	Printer model	Displays the selected printer model.
2	Printer Serial No.	Displays the printer serial number.
3	Status	Displays the remote panel status.
4	Remote Panel Mode(Status)	Displays current remote panel mode from: Remote Panel Mode On Remote Panel Mode Off
5	Remote Panel Mode Button	Enable/Disable remote panel mode.
6	Update	Change the printer settings.
7	Printer Information button	Get current panel setting information from your printer. *Printer information of the selected tab is obtained.
8	Exit button	Exit the Remote Panel menu.

### 13.4.2 Printer Status

Displays the printer status and remotely operate the printer.



No.	Name	Description
1	Status Information	Displays the current printer status. If the printer encounters a system error, a workaround will be displayed.
2	Heater Information *1,2	Check and change the heater temperature. * The Heater Set temperature is reflected from: Media Setting tab > Media Type > Media Setting > Heater. When the printer is warming up, you can cancel the warm-up and start printing.
3	Ink Information	The remaining ink amount of the printer is displayed. For the details of S/C card recovery, see 7.7.2 S/C Card Recovery.
4	Printer Control	Remotely perform the following operations: •Print Cancel •Pausing Print •Media Cut •Nozzle Check
5	Sleep Mode *3	Remotely switch the printer to Sleep Mode.
6	Auto Printer Information	Check this box to automatically get printer information. On : Enable Off : Disable *This function is not available when MSM is launched from the Windows printer driver.
7	Interval	When "Auto Printer Information" is ON, set a time interval to get the latest information from the printer. Value can be set from: <60[sec]> / 30[ sec] / 10[ sec] / 3[ sec]
8	Status Only	Check this box to obtain the printer status information only to minimize the data acquisition time. *This check box is enabled when "Auto Printer Information" is set to ON.

NOTE

- \*1 This function is available for XPJ-1682SR / 1641SR / 1341SR-P/ 1641SR-P.
- \*2 This function is available for XPJ-1642WR.
- \*3 XPJ-1682UR / HA-1642 is not supported.

### 13.4.2.1. Heater Information

Check and change the heater temperature.



No.	Io. Name Description	
1	Heater : Heater Set	Check and change the heater temperature for the media.
2	Heater : Temperature	The actual temperature of each heater will be displayed.
3	Warm-up Cancel	When the printer is warming up, you can cancel the warm-up and start printing.

### 13.4.2.2. Sleep Mode

Remotely switch the printer to Sleep Mode.

Pinter model XPJ-1682SR   Pinter model XPJ-1682SR   Pinter Information: Status:   Get printer Information: Get printer Information:   Status: Finter Control   Status: Media Setting     Status: Finter Control     Status: Interval   Control Interval   Obstation Interval   Obstation Interval   Obstation Interval   Obstation Interval   Date (YVY-Hondo-D-Hitticht) Interval   Date (YVY-Hondo-D-Hitticht) Interval   Date (YVY-Hondo-D-Hitticht) Interval   Date (YVY-Hondo-D-Hitticht) Interval   Date (YVY-Hondo-Hitticht) Interval   Print: Image: Control   Image: Control Image: Cont	Remote Panel		3
Printer Status Printer Control Media Setting Advenced Setting          Status Information       Printer Control         Auto Prizer Information       Interval       Egg = [sc]         Date (YYYY-Ht-D0-HH: Httl)       Contents       Print Garcel         2019-11-22       G9:25       Ready to Print       Image: Status Date         Heater Sat:       Image: Status Information       Print Garcel       Nozale Check.         Heater Sat:       Image: Status Information       Nozale Check.       Nozale Check.         Platen:       Image: Clipper:       Image: Status Information       Nozale Check.         Information       Warmulg: Darcel       Warmulg: Darcel         Information       Varmulg: Darcel       Enter         Information       Status Information       Enter         100       1       2       3       4       5       7       8         100       1       2       3       4       5       7       8       1       1       1       1         100       1       2       3       4       5       7       8       1       1       1       1       1       1       1       1       1       1       1       1       1       1       1       1 <th>Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :</th> <th>Remote Panel Mode Update</th> <th></th>	Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode Update	
Status Information       Print vol 0 - Unit Hold Contents         Auto Prive Information       Interval       ©        East       Status Daty         Date (YYYY - HH- 00 - HH: HN)       Contents $W = 0 - HH: HN$ Contents         2019-11-22       09:25       Ready to Print $W = 0 - HH: HN$ $W = 0 - HH: HN = HI - HI: HN: HN: HN: HN: HN: HN: HN: HN: HN: HN$	Status: Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info. Exit	
Auto Printe Information       Interval       IO       Itel       IO       Itel       IO       IO <thio< <="" td=""><td>Printer Status Printer Control   Media Setting   Advanced Setting  </td><td></td><td></td></thio<>	Printer Status Printer Control   Media Setting   Advanced Setting		
$\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $	Status Information Printer Control		1
$\begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $	🗌 Auto Printer Information Interval : 60 🔽 [sec] 📄 Status Only		
Heater Information         Heater Set:       Temperature:         Pret : $\bigcirc$ Platen : $\bigcirc$ Dyger : $\bigcirc$ Diger : $\bigcirc$			
Heater fadrmastion         Heater Sat:       Temperature:         Pre       :       16       G       60       F         Platern       :       0       C:       Platern       :       0       0       .         Dryper       :       0	2019-11-22 09:25 Ready to Print		
Heater Sat:       Temperature:         Pre       :       Imperature:         Pre       :       Imperature:         Pre       :       Imperature:         Pre       :       Imperature:         Pre       :       Imperature:       Imperature:         Pre       :       Imperature:         <	Print Cancel	Pausing Print Nozzle Check	
Pre       :       0       C:       Pre       :       16       C:       60       F         Platen       :       0       C:       Platen       :       15       C:       59       F       Image: Constraint of the state of t	Heater Information		
Platen :       I<	Heater Set : Temperature :		
Dryper         Image: Constraint of the second	Pre : 🗆 🗊 (C) Pre : 16 (C) 60 (F) 🗙 🛛 📝		
Dyper     I     Diger     Diger <thdiger< th=""> <thdiger< th=""> <thdiger< th=""> <thdige< td=""><td></td><td>]</td><td></td></thdige<></thdiger<></thdiger<></thdiger<>		]	
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 100 50	Dryer : 0 [C] Dryer : 15 [C] 59 [F]		
100     Image: Constraint of the second	Ink Information Sleep Mode		
50	Enter	Start	
50 - Cearing Type			
Cleaning Type Short -		6 [h] 🔽 🛡	1
	Clearing Type	Short -	

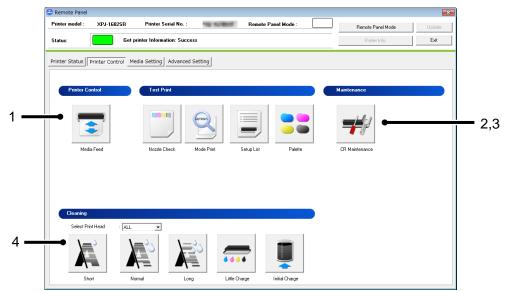
No.	Name	Description
1	Enter	Enter/Wake up from Sleep Mode.
2	Cleaning Timer	Set the cleaning timer during Sleep Mode. Setting : 1/2/3/4/5/<6>/9/12/18/24 [h]
3	Cleaning Type *1	Set the cleaning type during Sleep Mode. Setting : Short / Normal / Long XPJ-1641SR-P Setting : Short / Normal / Long / < Flushing >

# NOTE

\*1 This function is available for non-XPJ-1341SR-P/1341WR-P.

### 13.4.3 Printer Control

Remotely operate the printer.



No.	Name	Description
1	Printer Control	Remotely operate the printer.
2	Test Print	Perform the test print selected from this menu.
3	Maintenance	Perform the maintenance selected from this menu.
4	Cleaning	Perform the cleaning selected from this menu.

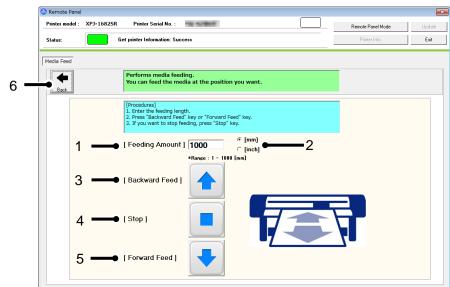
#### 13.4.3.1. Printer Control

Remotely operate the printer.

#### (1) Media Feed

Specify the feeding amount of media set in the printer and feed it in forward/ backward with the specified

amount.



No.	Name	Description	
1	Feeding Amount	Specify the media feeding amount range between: •In [mm] setting: 1 ~ < 1000 mm > (in increments of 1 mm) •In [inch] setting: 0.04 ~ < 39.37 inch > (in increments of 0.01 inch)	
2	Unit of Feeding Amount	Select the unit of feeding amount from: <mm> or inch</mm>	
3	Backward Feed	Feed the media backward with the specified amount.	
4	Stop	Stop the media feeding.	
5	Forward Feed	Feed the media forward with the specified amount.	
6	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.	

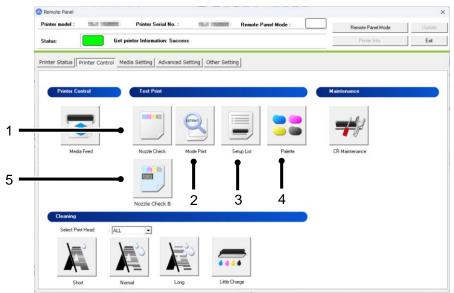
<> Default setting

NOTE

• The printer will feed the media according to the setting you specified. Make sure to specify the appropriate amount to prevent unwinding.

#### 13.4.3.2. Test Print

Perform the test print selected from the menu.



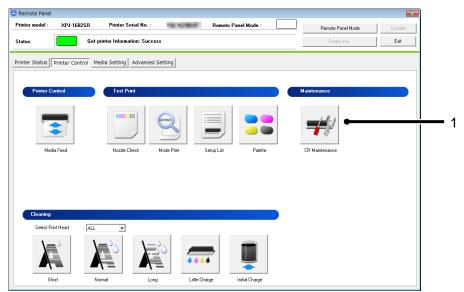
No.	Name	Description
1	Nozzle Check	Print the nozzle check pattern.
2	Mode Print	Print the printing conditions.
3	Setup List	Print the current printer setup list.
4	Palette	Print the palette pattern. *In some print modes, this menu is not available.
5	Nozzle Check B *1	Print the nozzle check B pattern.

NOTE

• \*1 The nozzle check B pattern is available when the ink set of XPJ-1682UR contains white ink.

#### 13.4.3.3. Maintenance

Remotely perform printer maintenances.



No.	Name	Description
1	CR Maintenance	Remotely perform CR Maintenances.

#### (1) CR Maintenance

### 1-1) Check Printer Status

Before performing CR maintenance, check the printer status.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
2	Start	Instruct the printer to perform CR Maintenance.

CR maintenance is being performed in the printer.

Please press Operation key on the printer panel to complete CR maintenance.

### 1-2) Waiting to press [Operation] button in printer.

Before performing CR maintenance, press Operation key on the printer panel and then start CR maintenance.

	2SR Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode U
Status:	Waiting to press [Operation] button in printer.	Printer Info.
CR Maintenance		
Back Cancel	Stat	
Detail	Press [Operation] button in the printer to perform CR maintenance. If you want to cancel CR maintenance, dick [Cancel] button in MSM.	L.
		2

No.	Name	Description
1	Cancel	Cancel to perform CR maintenance.

# NOTE

• Before starting CR maintenance, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

### 1-3) Performing CR maintenance

CR maintenance is being performed in the printer.

After CR maintenance is completed, press Operation key on the printer panel.

Remote Panel				
Printer model : XPJ-1682	Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. :		Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status:	Performing CR maintenance.		Printer Info.	Exit
CR Maintenance				
Back Cancel	Periodical maintenance is required to maintain the printer performance.			
Detail	Operating time:10[sec]			
	After CR maintenance is completed, press Operation key on	the printer panel.		
2•				
	-			

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.
2	Detail	CR maintenance elapsed time is displayed.



After CR maintenance is completed, make sure to press Operation key on the printer panel.

### (2) Longstore

Wash the print head with the cleaning fluid.

NOTE

• Make sure to use the dedicated cleaning fluid.

# 1) Start LongStore

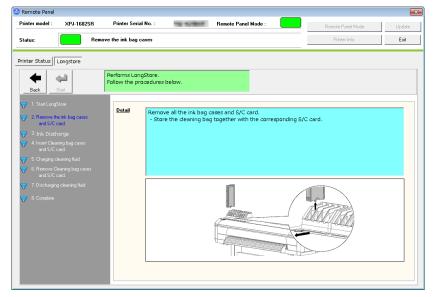
Remote Panel           Printer model :         XPJ-16825           Status:         Image: Compared and the second	R Printer Serial No. : Start LongStore	Remote Panel Mode :		Remote Panel Mode Printer Info.	Update Exit
<ul> <li>Jadu:</li> <li>Printer Status</li> <li>Longstore</li> <li>Longstore</li> <li>I Sket</li> <li>Stat</li> <li>Stat</li></ul>	Performs LongStore. Follow the procedures Detail Wash Cicik ( Reac - Mai - Mai - Mai	s below. the print head with the cleaning fluid. [Start] button. ( Here First] ke sure to use the dedicated cleaning flui ning the LongStore, do not turn off the pri he sure the waste fluid bottle has enough	inter unless neo	essary.	

No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Start LongStore.
2	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

#### 2) Remove ink bag cases and S/C card.

This message is displayed when any ink bag cases and S/C card is inserted in the printer.

If no ink bag cases and S/C card is inserted, this message will be skipped.



#### 3) Ink discharge.

After removing the cleaning bag cases and S/C card, the printer will ink discharge.

Remote Panel				<b>—</b> ×
Printer model : XPJ-1682SR	Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status: Ink Dis	charge( 0 / 100 [%])		Printer Info.	Exit
Printer Status Longstore				
Back Start	Performs LongStore Follow the procedur			
<ul> <li>✓ 1. Start LongStore</li> <li>✓ 2. Remove the ink bag case: and S/C card</li> <li>✓ 3. Ink Discharge</li> <li>✓ 4. Inset Clearing bag case: and S/C card</li> <li>✓ 5. Choging clearing fluid</li> <li>✓ 6. Remove Clearing bag case: and S/C card</li> <li>✓ 7. Discharging clearing fluid</li> <li>✓ 8. Complete</li> </ul>	Detail Dis Pie:	charge ink fluid takes about 7.5 minutes. se wait.		

### 4) Insert Cleaning bag cases and S/C card.

Insert cleaning bag cases and S/C card to all the slots.

😂 Remote Panel		×
Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status: Insert Cleaning bag cases	Printer Info.	Exit
Printer Status       Longstore         Parforms Longstore.       Follow the procedures below.         ▼       1 Shat LongStore         ▼       1 Shat LongStore         ▼       1 Shat LongStore         ▼       2 and Coards         ▼       3 Thk Discharge         ▼       3 Thk Discharge         ▼       3 Thk Discharge         ▼       3 Thk Discharge         ▼       3 Charging cleaning Bid         S       Scoreplete		ning

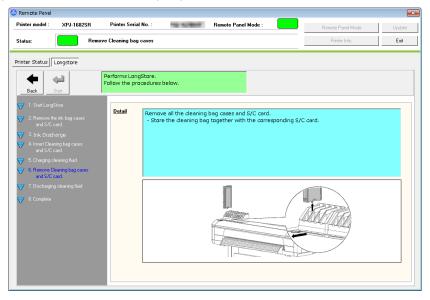
### 5) Charging cleaning fluid

After the cleaning bag cases and S/C card are inserted into the slots, the printer will start charging cleaning fluid.

Remote Panel 'rinter model : XPJ-1682SR	Printer Serial	No. : •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Updat
itatus: Char	ging cleaning fluid	0 / 100 [%])		Printer Info.	Exit
inter Status Longstore					
Back Start	Performs Long Follow the pro				
You Start LongStore     Start LongStore     Start Clearing bag cares     and S/C card     S ink, Discharge     A Instart Clearing bag cares     and S/C card     S Charging chearing had     S Remove Clearing bag cases     and S/C card     Z Discharging clearing fluid     R Complete	Detail	Charge cleaning fluid 1 Please wait.	takes about 14 minutes.		

### 6) Remove cleaning bag cases and S/C card

After charging fluid, remove all the cleaning bag cases and S/C card.



#### 7) Discharging cleaning fluid

After removing the cleaning bag cases and S/C card, the printer will discharge cleaning fluid.

atus: Dis	charging cleaning	fluid( 0 / 100 [%])	Printer Info.	Upda
nter Status Longstore				
Back Start	Performs Lo Follow the p	gStore. ocedures below.		
<ul> <li>7 1. Start LongStore</li> <li>7 2. Remove the ink bag cases and S/C card.</li> <li>7 3. Ink Discharge</li> </ul>	Detail	Discharge cleaning fluid takes about 7.5 min Please wait.	nutes.	
<ul> <li>4. Insert Cleaning bag cases and S/C card.</li> <li>5. Charging cleaning fluid</li> </ul>				
<ol> <li>Remove Cleaning bag cases and S/C card.</li> <li>Discharging cleaning fluid</li> <li>Romplete</li> </ol>				

### 8) Complete

"Longstore" maintenance has been completed.

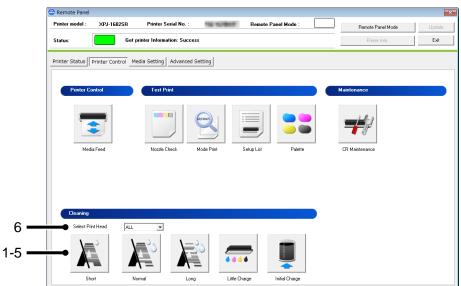
Restart the printer and perform initial ink charge.

Remote Panel				
Printer model : XPJ-1682SR	Printer Serial No	10.101	Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode
Status: Cor	mpleted LongStore.			 Printer Info.
Printer Status Longstore				
	Performs LongSto			
Back Start	Follow the proces	lures below.		
1. Start LongStore				
<ul> <li>2. Remove the ink bag cases</li> </ul>	Detail L	ongStore has been co	mpleted.	
and S/C card.		Read Here First]	perform initial ink charge	
<ul> <li>3. Ink Discharge</li> <li>4. Insert Cleaning bag cases</li> </ul>	R	estart the printer and	perform initial ink charge	
and S/C card.				
<ul> <li>5. Charging cleaning fluid</li> <li>6. Remove Cleaning bag cases</li> </ul>				
and S/C card.				
<ul> <li>7. Discharging cleaning fluid</li> <li>9. Complete</li> </ul>				
V 8. Complete				

No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

#### 13.4.3.4. Cleaning

Performs head cleaning.



No.	Name	Description
1	Short Cleaning *1	Discharges smaller amount of ink compared to "Normal".
2	Normal Cleaning *1	Select this mode normally.
3	Long Cleaning *1	Discharges larger amount of ink compare to "Normal". Used when the print head does not improve by normal Head cleaning.
4	Little Charge *1	Refills a small amount of ink. Charge a small amount of ink when printing is not stable after initial ink charge.
5	Initial Charge *2	Perform initial ink charge. Refer to the (1) Initial Charge for the details.
6	Select Print Head	Select the print head to be cleaned if the printer has more than one print head. Setting : <all> / Head 1 / Head 2</all>

- \*1 The print head can be selected.
- \*2 This function is not available for XPJ-1682UR.
- Do not remove ink cartridges/ink bags during cleaning. Air may enter the ink tubes.

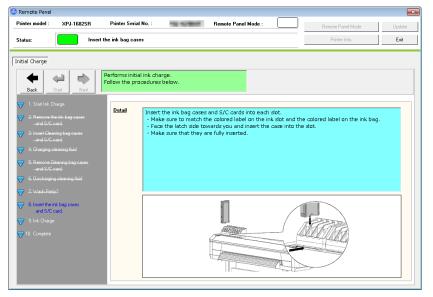
#### (1) Initial Charge

Perform the initial ink charge after ink cartridges are inserted into the correct slots.

#### 1) Insert Ink bag cases and S/C card

After the counter reset, insert the ink bag cases and S/C card.

After the ink bag cases and S/C card are inserted into the correct slots, the printer will start initial ink charge.



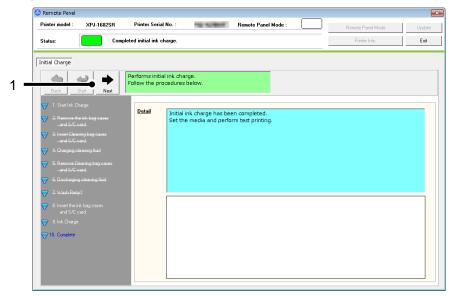
### 2) Ink Charge

The printer is charging inks.

😂 Remote Panel			<b>X</b>
Printer model : XPJ-1682SR	Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status: Ink Charge	e( 0 / 100 [%])	Printer Info.	Exit
Initial Charge	forms initial ink charge.		
Back Start Next Fol	low the procedures below.		
<ul> <li>1. Start Ink Charge</li> <li>2. Remove the ink bag cases and S/C card.</li> </ul>	Detail Initial filling takes about 10.5 minutes. Ink filling operation and pause during the ink replenishment.	e operation are repeate	2d
-and SYC dard. 3. Insert Cleaning bag cases -and SYC card.	Please wait.		
<ul> <li>4. Charging cleaning fluid</li> <li>5. Remove Cleaning bag cases -and S/C card.</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>A wash neity?</li> <li>8. Insert the ink bag cases and S/C card.</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>✓ 9. Ink Charge</li> <li>✓ 10. Complete</li> </ul>			
1			

# 3)Complete

Initial ink charge has been completed.



No.	Name	Description
1	Back	Go back to the Printer Control Main Menu.

#### 13.4.4 Media Setting

Check and change the media setting.

If you use more than one media, you can store the each media setting including the heater temperature from this menu.

😂 Remote Panel	×
Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode : Upda	te 🍐
Status: Get printer Information: Success Printer Info. Exit	
Printer Status Printer Control Media Setting Advanced Setting	
Меба Турс	
Media Type : Type1(Type1) 🔻	
Modia Setting	
Print Mode : B2 ▼ Elfect : None ▼ Adjust Print : Start	
Vacuum Fan : High Vacuum Fan : High Vacuum Fan : High Vacuum Fan : Start	
Pie Heater : □ 0 [C] Pilaten Heater : □ 0 [C] Dryer : □ 0 [C]	
Медіа Туре Сору	
Copy from Copy to Type 1 (Type 1)	

No.	Name	Description
1	Media Type	Check and change the media type loaded in the printer.
2	Media Setting	Check and change the current media setting.
3	Media Type Copy	Copy the current media setting to other Media Type.
4	Update	Change the media setting.
5	Initialization	Initialize the each setting to factory default.

- To change the setting, change the values or settings and then click [Update] button.
- Multiple settings can be changed at once.

### 13.4.4.1. Media Type

Check and change the Media Type loaded in the printer.

C Remote Panel	
Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode Update
Status: Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info. Exit
Printer Status Printer Control Media Setting Advanced Setting	
Media Type	
Media Type : Type 1 (Type 1)	
Media Sotting	
Print Mode : B2  Effect : None  Adjust Print :	Start
Vacuum Fan : High  Thickness : 170 [um] PF Adjust :	Start
Pre Heater : 0 [C] Platen Heater : 0 [C] Dryer : 0	0 [C]
Media Type Copy	
Copy from Copy to Type 1 (Type 1)	
Type 1 (Type 1 )	

No.	Name	Description
1	Media Type	Check and change the Media Type loaded in the printer.



• To change the setting, change the values or settings and then click [Update] button.

### 13.4.4.2. Media Setting

Check and change the media setting currently loaded in the printer.

	C Remote Panel
	Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode Update
	Status: Get printer Information: Success Printer Info. Ext
	Printer Status Printer Control Media Setting Advanced Setting
	Media Type
	Media Tupe : Type 1 (Type 1) •
	Media Setting
1,2,3 🗕	Print Mode : B2 💌 Elfect : None 💌 Adjust Print : Start
	Vacuum Fan : High 💌 Thickness : 170 [um] PF Adjust : Start 🖛 4,5,6
7,8,9 🗕	Pre Heater :  0 IC) Platen Heater :  0 IC) Dryer :  0 IC)
	Media Type Copy
	Copy from Copy to Type 1 (Type 1) Copy to Start

No.	Name	Description
1	Print Mode *3	Check and change the Print Mode of the media. XPJ-1682SR/1682WR/1642WR: Setting : Q1 / Q2 / Q3 / Q4 / G1 / <g2> / B1 / B2 / B3 / B4 XPJ-1641SR: Setting : Q1 / Q2 / Q3 / Q4 / G1 / <g2> / G3 / G4 / B1 / B2 / B3 / B4 XPJ-1341SR-P/1641SR-P/1341WR-P: Setting : High Quality / &lt; Quality &gt; / Production / High Speed XPJ-1682UR: Setting : High Quality / &lt; Quality &gt; / Production / High Speed / Draft</g2></g2>

No.	Name	Description
2	Effect *3	Check and change the Effect of the media. XPJ-1682SR/1682WR: Setting : None / Wave / Fine&Fuzz / <fine&fog> / A-S.Fine&amp;Wave / B-S.Fine&amp;Wave XPJ-1641SR: Setting : None / Wave / Fog / Fine&amp;Fuzz / <fine&fog> / A-S.Fine&amp;Wave / B-S.Fine&amp;Wave XPJ-1642WR: Setting : None / Wave / Fine&amp;Fuzz / <fine&fog> / A-S.Fine&amp;Wave / B-S.Fine&amp;Wave / i-Weave Ex / i-Screen XPJ-1341SR-P/1641SR-P/1341WR-P: Setting : None / Wave / Fine&amp;Fuzz / <fine&fog> / i-Weave Ex / i-Screen XPJ-1682UR: Setting : None / i-Weave UVEx</fine&fog></fine&fog></fine&fog></fine&fog>
3	Adjust Print	Perform Bi-D adjustment for the media.
4	Vacuum Fan	Check and change the vacuum fan of the media. XPJ-1682SR/1682WR Setting : Low / Middle / <high> / Ex High XPJ-1642WR Setting : <off> / Low / Middle / High / Ex High XPJ-1341SR-P/1341WR-P Setting : Off / Low / Middle / <high> XPJ-1641SR-P/1682SR-P/1682UR/HA-1642 Setting : Off / Low / Middle / <high> / Ex High</high></high></off></high>
5	Thickness	Check and change the thickness of media. XPJ-1682SR/1682WR/1641SR : Setting : 80 - <170> - 2800 [µm] XPJ-1642WR : Setting : 40 - <170> - 1000 [µm] XPJ-1341SR-P/1641SR-P/1341WR-P/1682SR-P/HA-1642: Setting : 80 - <170> - 1300 [µm] XPJ-1682UR: Setting : 40 - <170> - 1300 [µm]
6	PF Adjust	Perform the paper feed adjustment of the media.
7	Pre Heater *1	Check and change the pre heater temperature for the media. Setting : Off / <30> – 50 [°C]

No.	Name	Description
8	Platen Heater *1	Check and change the platen heater temperature for the media. Setting : Off / <30> – 50 [°C]
9	Dryer *1,2	Check and change the dryer temperature for the media. Setting : Off / <30> – 50 [°C]

- To change the setting, change the values or settings and then click [Update] button.
- Multiple settings can be changed at once.
- \*1 This function is available for XPJ-1682SR/XPJ-1641SR/1341SR-P/1641SR-P.
- \*2 This function is available for XPJ-1642WR.
- \*3 HA-1642 is not supported.

# (1) Adjust Print

Perform Bi-D adjustment for the media loaded in the printer.

### 1)Thickness

Specify the media thickness.

	Remote Panel Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Update
	Statu:: Get pinter Information: Success Printer Status Adjustment Print Performs adjustment prints.	Pinter Info. Ext
4 —	Perform the adjustments by your media type. <u>Back</u> Media Thickness      Set the media thickness.     If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.	Reach Adjustment     Performs rough adjustment. Check the printed result and select the     number that has smallest misalignment.     "The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.
1	Meda Type : Type11 (Type11 ) Thickness : 170 [um] Confirm Adjustment Performs confirm adjustment. Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine adjustment,	21         Pattern Pint         :         Start           3         Adjustment Value         :         Set           Head No.         A         B         C         D         E         F           1         1111111         1111         1111         111         111         v         v           2         11         1111         111         111         v         v         v           4.         Micro Adjustment         I
	Pattern Part : Start	Performe fine adjustment- Check the printed result and select the investigament.       The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.       31.     Patter Pint     Stat       32.     Adjustment Value     Stet       Head No.     A     C     C       1     4     u/4     u/4     u/4       2     4     u/4     u/4     u/4

No.	Name	Description
1	Media Type	The Media Type loaded in the printer is displayed.
2	Thickness	Enter the media thickness set in the printer.
3	Set	Set the media thickness to the printer.
4	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

# 2) Confirmation

Print the adjustment pattern in the current setting.

Remote Panel      Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode U
Status: Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info.
Printer Status Adjustment Print	
Performs adjustment prints. Perform the adjustments by your media type.	
1. Media Thickness	3. Rough Adjustment
Set the media thickness. If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.	Performs rough adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.
Media Type : Type11 ( Type11 )	2-1. Pattern Print : Start
Thickness : 170 [um] Set	2-2. Adjustment Value : Set
2. Confirm Adjustment	Head No. A B C D E F
Performs confirm adjustment. Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine	
adjustment,	4. Micro Adjustment
Pattern Print : Start - 1	Performs fine adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.
	3-1. Pattern Print : Start
	3-2. Adjustment Value : Set
	Head No. A B C D E F

No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Print the adjustment pattern in the current setting.
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

# 3) Rough Adjustment

Perform rough adjustment.

C Remote Panel	×
Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Update
Status: Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info. Exit
Printer Status Adjustment Print	
Performs adjustment prints. Perform the adjustments by your media type.	
1. Media Thickness	3. Rough Adjustment
Set the media thickness. If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.	Performs rough adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.
Media Type : Type11 ( Type11 )	2-1. Pattern Print : Start
Thickness : 170 [um] Set	2-2. Adjustment Value : Set
2. Confirm Adjustment	HeadNo. A B C D E F
Performs confirm adjustment. Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine	
adjustment,	4. Micro Adjustment
Pattern Print : Start	Performs fine adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.
	3-1. Pattern Print : Start
	3-2. Adjustment Value : Set
	Head No. A B C D E F

No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Print the rough adjustment pattern.
2	Set	Set the adjustment value to the printer after the value change.
3	Adjustment Value	Change each adjustment value.
		*Adjustment patterns and adjustment range vary depending on the
		printer or ink type you use.
4	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

# 4) Micro Adjustment

Perform micro adjustment.

Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Upda
Status: Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info. Exit
Printer Status Adjustment Print	
Performs adjustment prints. Perform the adjustments by your media type.	
1. Media Thickness	3. Rough Adjustment
Set the media thickness. If you do not know the thickness, leave in blank.	Performs rough adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.
Media Type : Type11 ( Type11 )	2-1. Pattern Print : Start
Thickness : 170 [um] Set	2-2. Adjustment Value : Set
2. Confirm Adjustment	Head No. A B C D E F
Performs confirm adjustment.	2 11 v 11 v 11 v 11 v 11 v 11 v v v
Check the printed result and perform rough adjustment or fine adjustment,	4. Micro Adjustment
Pattern Print : Start	Performs fine adjustment. Check the printed result and select the number that has smallest misalignment. *The number cannot be entered before printing rough patterns.
	3-1. Pattern Print : Start
	3-2. Adjustment Value : Set
	Head No. A B C D E F

No.	Name	Description
1	Start	Print the rough adjustment pattern.
2	Set	Set the adjustment value to the printer after the value change.
3	Adjustment Value	Change each adjustment value.
		*Adjustment patterns and adjustment range vary depending on the
		printer or ink type you use.
4	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

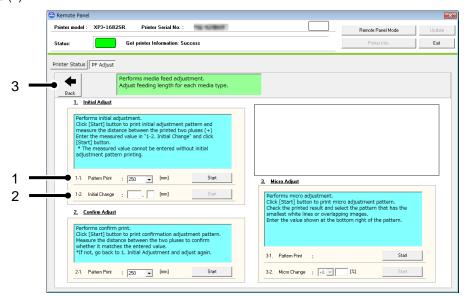
#### (2) PF Adjust

Perform the paper feed adjustment.

### 1) Initial Adjust

Performs initial adjustment.

Click [Start] button to print initial adjustment pattern and measure the distance between the printed two pluses (+)



No.	Name	Description
1	Pattern Print - Start	Print the initial PF adjustment pattern.
		Pattern length : 100 [mm] ~ < 250 [mm] > ~ 500 [mm]
		(in increments of 50 [mm])
2	Initial Change - Start	Set the initial PF adjustment value to the printer.
		Adjustable range : $\pm 50.0$ [mm] from the initial PF adjustment
		pattern (in increments of 0.1[mm]).
		e.g.) If the initial PF adjustment pattern is set to 250[mm], the
		adjustable range will be 200 [mm] ~ 300 [mm].
3	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

# 2) Confirm Adjust

Performs confirm print.

Click [Start] button to print confirmation adjustment pattern.

	😂 Remote Panel 📃				
	Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode Update			
	Status: Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info. Exit			
	Printer Status PF Adjust				
2 —	Performs media feed adjustment. Adjust feeding length for each media type.				
	1. Initial Adjust				
	Performs initial adjustment. Click [Start] button to print initial adjustment pattern and measure the distance between the printed two pluses (+) Enter the measured value in "1-2. Initial Change" and click [Start] button. * The measured value cannot be entered without initial adjustment pattern printing.				
	1-1. Pattern Print : 250 ▼ (mm) Start	3. Micro Adjust			
	1-2. Initial Change :, (mm) Start	Performs micro adjustment.			
	Click [5tart] button to print micro adjustment pattern Check the printed result and select the pattern that h smallest while lines or overlapping images. Enter the value shown at the bottom right of the patt				
	Performs confirm print. Cick [Start] button to print confirmation adjustment pattern. Measure the distance between the two pluese to confirm whether it matches the entered value. *If not, go back to 1. Initial Adjustment and adjust again.	3-1. Patem Print :			
1 —	2-1. Pattern Print : 250 r [mm] Start	3-2 Micro Change : +0 [%] Start			

No.	Name	Description
1	Pattern Print - Start	Print the PF adjustment pattern with current setting.
		Pattern length : 100 [mm] ~ < 250 [mm] > ~ 500 [mm]
		(in increments of 50 [mm])
2	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

# 3) Micro Adjust

Performs micro adjustment.

Click [Start] button to print micro adjustment pattern.

Printer model : XPJ-1682SR Printer Serial No. :	Remote Panel Mode
Status: Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info.
Printer Status PF Adjust	
Performs media feed adjustment. Adjust feeding length for each media type.	
1. Initial Adjust	1
Click (Start) button to print initial adjustment pattern and measure the distance between the printed two pluses (+) Enter the measured value in "1-2. Initial Change" and click (Start) button. * The measured value cannot be entered without initial adjustment pattern printing.	
1-1. Pattern Print : 250 💌 [mm] Start	3. Micro Adjust
1-1.         Pattern Prink         :         250          [mm]         Statt           1-2.         Initial Change         :         .          [mm]         Statt	Performs micro adjustment.
	Performs micro adjustment. Click [Start] button to print micro adjustment pattern. Check the printed result and select the pattern that has the smallest white lines or overlapping images.
1.2 Initial Change : [mm] Stat	Performs micro adjustment. Click [Start] button to print micro adjustment pattern. Check the printed result and select the pattern that has the

No.	Name	Description
1	Pattern Print - Start	Print the PF adjustment pattern with current setting.
2		Set the micro adjustment value to the printer.
	Micro Change - Start	Adjustable range: ±5.00 [%] from the initial PF adjustment pattern
		(in increments of 0.01[%]).
3	Back	Go back to the Media Setting Menu.

### 13.4.4.3. Media Type Copy

The selected user type settings can be copied to other user type.

The settings which can be copied are as follows:

Print Mode / Effect / set values for Adjust Print /

PF Adjustment values (initial feeding length/initial adjustment value/micro adjustment value) /

Heater / Vacuum Fan / Media Thickness / Media Setting

😂 Remote Panel					
Printer model : XPJ-1682SR	Printer Serial No. :	N/BOX		Remote Panel	Mode Update
Status: Get	orinter Information: Success			Printer Info	). Exit
Printer Status Printer Control	edia Setting Advanced Set	ting			
	•				
Media Type					
Media Type 1 (Type 1 (Ty	be1) 💌				
Media Setting					
Print Mode : B2	▼ Effect	None 💌	Adjust Print :	Start	
Vacuum Fan : High	Thickness	: 170 [um]	PF Adjust :	Start	
Pre Heater : 🗖 🖸	[C] Platen Heater	: 🗆 🛛 [C]	Diyer :	0 [C]	
Media Type Copy					
Copy from	Copy to				
Type1(Type1)		Start	<b>—</b> 3		
			-		
	•				
	2				

No.	Name	Description
1	Copy from	The selected Media Type is displayed.
2	Copy to	Select a Media Type that you want to copy to.
		All the Media Types other than the source Media Type can be
		selected.
		e.g.: If "User Type 1" is selected, the available copy destination will
		be User Type 2-15 or ALL.
3	Start	Start copying the setting.

NOTE

• Once the setting of copy destination is changed, it cannot restore to the original setting.

### 13.4.5 Advanced Setting

Check and change the advanced setting set in the printer.

From this menu, user can check the initial printer settings, and initialize the each setting to factory default.

😂 Remote Panel					_		3
Printer model :	Pris Rumani Pri	nter Serial No. :	10.10180	Remote Panel Mode :		Remote Panel Mode	Update
Status:	Get printer I	nformation: Succ	ess			Printer Info.	Exit
Printer Status	Printer Control Media Se	tting Advanced	Setting Other Setting				
Advanced	Setting						
Spitting	On 💌	Pass Count	: [cnt]	Exhaust Fan : Low	• Trt	t Interlace : Auto	•
Side Margin	: [5 [mm]	LED Light	: On 💌	Single Head : Low	• N	ozzle Line : Off	•
Media Initial	Width 💌	Width	: 1252 [mm]	Nozzle Settings : Nozzle ALL	• H	leater Control : Norma	u 🗸
Output Mode	Off 💌	InkDry Timer	0 [sec]	Alert Buzzer : On	▼ SI	tart Feed : + 💌 0	. 0 [mm]
Page Gap	:	Header Dump	: Off 💽	Auto nozzle Check : Off	▼ N	lumber of print jobs : 🗆	0 [cnl
Method of Cut	Single Cut - 3 st	Cut Pressure	High 💌	Auto Nozzle Select : Off	•		
Prev. Stick.	Off 💌	Standby Heat	60(min)	Roll Length : Off	• 0	ength : 0	[m]
Head Travel	Media 💌	Multi Strike	: 1 [cnt]	End Detection : Off	y Prin	nt Stop : Off	v
Strike Wait	: 0 .0 [sec]	Slant Check	On 💌				
Auto Cleaning Standby Mode Cleaning Typ		Cleaning Interval	[360 [min]				
While Printing Cleaning Typ		Cleaning Interval	: [180 [min]				
Before Print	: Off 💌						

No.	Name	Description
1	Advanced Setting	Check and change the advanced setting set in the printer.

### 13.4.5.1. Advanced Setting

Check and change the advanced setting set in the printer.

Printer model : Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode : Remote Panel Mode Update	
Status: Get printer Information: Success Printer Info. Exit	
Printer Status Printer Control Media Setting Advanced Setting Other Setting	
Advanced Setting	
1,2	<b>-</b> 22,28
3,27 Side Margin : 20 [nm] LED Light : Auto V Single Head : Off V Nozzle Line : Off V	- 24,33
4,5 Media Initial : Width Vidth : 1250 [mm] Nozele Settings : Nozele ALL V Heater Control : Normal V	- 29,25
6,7 Dubut Mode : Diff v InkDay Timer : 0 [sec]	- 26
8,23 Page Gap : Normal Header Dump : Dn Auto Nozzle Check : Diff Number of print jobs : 0 [crit]	- 30,31
9,10 Method of Cut : Single Cut - 3 ab  Cut Pressure : High  Auto Nozzle Select : Dn	<b>-</b> 32
11,12 Prev. Stick : Off Standby Heat : 60(min) Standby Mode	
13 11 - Head Travel : Data - Slart Check : Dff - Leaning type : Dff - Le	<b>-</b> 17,18
15,16 Multi Stake : 1 [crv] Stake Wat : 0 0 [crc] Clearing Type : 0// Clearing type :	- 19,20
Before Print : Diff  Multi Strike for Each Laver	- 21,39
34,35 Color : 1 [cri] White : 1 [cri] White Color Maintenance : Normal Color Maintenance : Normal	- 37,38
36 Variah : 1 [crit]	

No.	Name	Description
1	Spitting	Set the spitting operation while printing. Setting : < On > / Off
2	Pass Count	Set the frequency (Pass Count) that the print head returns to the spitting box (located) on the origin side when setting "On" or "On Media" in the Spitting menu. Setting : < 1 Cnt > ~ 999 Cnt
3	Side Margin	Check and change the side margin setting of the media. Setting : < 5 mm> ∼ 25 mm XPJ-1682UR Setting : < 5 mm> ∼ 80 mm
4	Media Initial	Check and change the media initial setting of the media. Setting : Off / Top&Width / < Width >
5	Width	Check and change the width of media. When the "Media Initial" is set to "Off", the "Media Width" can be changed. When the "Media Initial" is set to other than "Off", the media initialization will be performed and the media width will be displayed on this menu. Setting : 210 mm $\sim$ <1000 mm > $\sim$ 1625 mm XPJ-1341SR-P/1341WR-P Setting : 210 mm $\sim$ <1000 mm > $\sim$ 1371 mm
6	Output Mode *1	Set the media operation after printing. Setting : < Off > / Take-up *1 / Auto Cut

No.	Name	Description
7	InkDry Timer	Set the ink drying time. Setting : < 0 sec > ~ 3600 sec (60 min)
8	Page Gap *2,15	Set the margin between images. Setting : < Normal > / Narrow
9	Method of Cut *3	Set the media cutting operation after printing. Setting : SingleCut-2 steps / < SingleCut-3 steps > / DoubleCut-2 steps / DoubleCut-3 steps
10	Cut Pressure	Set the media cutting pressure for the cutting operation. Setting : Low /< High >
11	Prev. Stick *4,6,7,18	Set to prevent media from sticking when printing starts. Setting : < Off > / On
12	Standby Heat *6,7,18	Set the time to preheat the heater while the printer is n standby mode. Setting : Off ~ 10 min ~ < 60 min >
13	Head Travel	Set the range that the print head moves while printing. Setting : Data / Machine / < Media Width >
14	Multi Strike	Set the overwrite count per line. Setting: <1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt
15	Pass Wait	Set the waiting time while overwrite printing. Setting : $< 0.0 \text{ sec} > \sim 0.1 \text{ sec} \sim 5.0 \text{ sec}$
		Use this setting when you want to print on the narrow media or the heater is unable to sufficiently warm up the media.
16	Slant Check	Set the slanting detection during media loading. Setting : Off / < On >
17	Auto Cleaning - Standby Mode Cleaning Type *14	Select the cleaning type to be performed automatically during standby mode. Setting : < Off > / Short / Normal / Long XPJ-1641SR-P/1341SR-P Setting : Off / Short / Normal / Long / < Flushing >
18	Auto Cleaning - Standby Mode Cleaning Interval *18	Set the time for auto-cleaning in WaitingTime mode. Setting : 10 min ~ < 360min> ~ 1440 min XPJ-1682WR/1341WR-P Setting : < Off > / 10 min ~ 360min ~ 1440 min
19	Auto Cleaning - While Printing Cleaning Type *10	Select the cleaning type to be performed automatically during printing. Setting : < Off > / Short / Normal / Long
20	Auto Cleaning - While Printing Cleaning Interval *18	Select the time for auto-cleaning while printing. Setting: < 5 min > ~ 180 min XPJ-1682WR/1341SR-P/1341WR-P Setting: < Off > / 5 min ~ 180 min
21	Auto Cleaning - Before Print	Set the value for auto-cleaning in pre-printing mode. Setting : < Off > / Short / Normal / Long XPJ-1341SR-P/1341WR-P Setting : < Off > / On

No.	Name	Description
22	Exhaust Fan *8	Set the exhaust fan. Setting : < Off > / Low / High XPJ-1642WR Setting : Off/ Low / <medium> / High</medium>
23	Header Dump	Set whether to print the following information (dump data) of print data. The dump data will be used as a reference material to receive technical supports.
24	Single Head *5	Set the single head. Setting : < Off > / Head1 / Head2
25	Heater Control *6	Set the heater control. Setting : < Normal > / Fixer / Dryer
26	Start Feed	Set the media feed amount at print start. Setting : -10.0mm ~ < 0 mm > ~ 500.0mm Unit : 0.1mm
27	LED Light *8,15	Check and change the LED light setting. Setting : < Auto > / On / Off
28	Top Edge Treatment	Check and change the Top Edge Treatment in the printer. Setting : Off / < Auto >
29	Nozzle Settings *11 Nozzle Area Select *13	Check and change the Nozzle Settings in the printer. Setting : < Nozzle ALL > / Nozzle A / Nozzle B / Nozzle C / Nozzle D / Nozzle E / Nozzle F
30	Auto Nozzle Check *12	Check and change the Auto Nozzle Check in the printer. Setting : < Off > / On
31	Number of print jobs *9,12	Check and change the Numver of print fobs in the printer. Setting : < Off > / 1 – 30 [Cnt]
32	Auto Nozzle Select *9,12	Check and change the Auto Nozzle Select in the printer. Setting : Off / < On >
33	Nozzle Line *13	Check and change the Nozzle Line in the printer. Setting : < Off > / Odd / Even
34	Multi Strike for Each Layer (Color) *19	Set the overwrite count for layer printing (Color) per line. Setting : <1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt
35	Multi Strike for Each Layer (White) *19	Set the overwrite count for layer printing (White) per line. Setting : <1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt
36	Multi Strike for Each Layer (Varnish) *17	Set the overwrite count for layer printing (Varnish) per line. Setting: <1 Cnt > ~ 9 Cnt

No.	Name	Description
37	White Maintenance *17	Check and change the White Maintenance in the printer. Setting : < Normal > / Little
38	Color Maintenance *17	Set the color maintenance. Setting : On / < Off >
39	Auto Cleaning - Accumulation Paint *17	Set the time for auto-cleaning in accumulation mode. Setting : <off> ~ 1[h] / 2[h] / 3[h] / 4[h]</off>

## NOTE

- If the previous version of F/W is installed, the settings may not be properly reflected. Make sure to install the latest F/W.
- \*1 When the take-up unit is not installed, do not set Output mode to "Take-up".

By doing so, the product will be unable to function properly.

- \*2 When the Output Mode menu is set to "Take Up", the Page Gap menu will be available.
  - \*3 When the media detection is set to "Off", the media cannot be cut automatically.

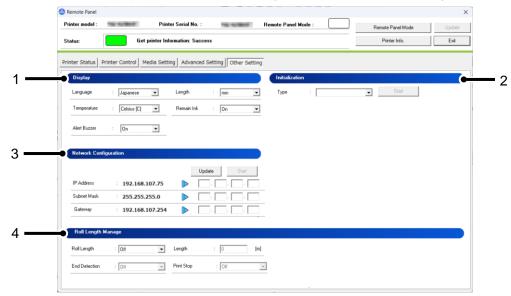
Some media may not be cut (cannot be cut at all or cannot be cut finely).

If the roll media length is not specified, the remaining media length may not be displayed correctly.

- \*4 When the Output Mode menu is set to "Take-up", the setting for the Prev. Stick menu is disabled.
- \*5 This function is available for XPJ-1682SR/1682WR/1642WR
- \*6 This function is available for XPJ-1682SR/1641SR \*7 This function is available for XPJ-1642WR
- \*8 This function is available for non-XPJ-1341SR/1341WR-P/1682UR.
- \*9 Enabled when the Auto Nozzle Check is set to "on".
- \*10 This function is available for XPJ-1682SR/1641SR/1642WR/1641SR-P
- \*11 This function is available for 1642WR/1341SR-P/1641SR-P/1341WR-P
- \*12 This function is available for XPJ-1641SR-P/1642WR
- \*13 This function is available for XPJ-1682SR-P
- \*14 This function is available for XPJ-1682SR/1641SR/1641SR-P/1642WR/1682SR-P/PK/1341SR-P
   HA-1642
- \*15 HA-1642/XPJ-1682UR is not supported.
- \*16 This function is available for HA-1642. \*17 This function is available for XPJ-1682UR.
- \*18 XPJ-1682UR is not supported.
- \*19 This function is available for XPJ-1682UR.

### 13.4.6 Other Setting

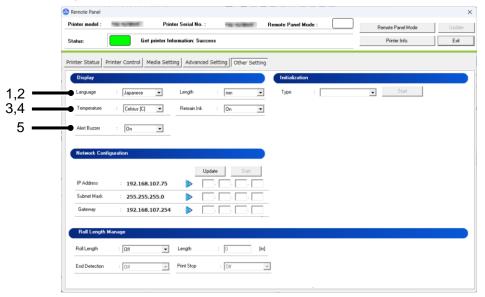
From this menu, user can check the initial printer settings, and initialize the each setting to factory default.



No.	Name Description	
1	Display Check and change the display setting set in the printer.	
2	Initialization Initialize the each setting to factory default.	
3	Network setting         Check and change the network setting set in the printer.	
4	Roll Length Manage         Check and change the Roll Length Manage set in the printer.	

### 13.4.6.1. Display

Check and change the display set in the printer.



No.	Name	Description
1	Language	Check and change the Language in the printer. Setting : < English > / Dutch / Spanish / French / Italian / Portuguese / German / Japanese XPJ-1341SR-P / 1341WR-P : Setting : < English > / Japanese
2	Temperature	Check and change the Temperature in the printer. Setting : < Celsius [C] > / Fahrenheit [F]
3	Length	Check and change the Length in the printer. Setting : < mm > / inch
4	Remain Ink *1	Set whether to display the remaining ink amount. Setting : Off / <on></on>
5	Alert Buzzer *2	Check and change the alert buzzer setting. Setting : < On > / Off

### NOTE

- \*1 This function is available for XPJ-1341SR-P/1341WR-P
- \*2 XPJ-1682UR is not supported.

### 13.4.6.2. Initialization

Returns the settings of the printer to default.

rinter Status Pri	inter Control Media Setti	ng Advanced Setting	Other Setting			
Display				itialization		
Language	English 💌	Length : mr	n 💌 Tj	pe :	Start	]•
Temperature	Celsius [C]	Remain Ink : Of	•			
<b>ネットワーク設定</b>						
		Update	Start			
IP Address			·			
Subnet Mask	100, 210, 210, 210		· ·			
Gateway	SHE WAS SHE WAS		· _ · _			

No.	Name	Description
1	Туре	ALL: All settings can be returned to factory default. Media Type : The setting of the Media Type is returned to factory default. Except Media Type: All settings except the Media Type are returned to factory default.
2	Start	Initialize the selected setting to the factory default.

# NOTE

• The network configuration cannot be initialized.

To change the network configuration, use the MUTOH LFP Finder application.

### 13.4.6.3. New network setteing

Check and change the network setting set in the printer.

	Remote Panel Printer model : Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :  Statu: Get printer Information: Success	Remote Panel Mode Upd Printer Info. Exi	
1,2 <b>—</b> 3 <b>—</b>	Printer Status Printer Control Media Setting Other Setting	✓ Stat	

No.	Name	Description
1	Update	Enable input boxes to enter new setting.
2	Start	Change the network configuration setting.
3	Current network configuration setting	Displays the current network configuration setting.
4	New network configuration setting	Enter the new network configuration setting that you want to change.

# NOTE

- If you want to change the network configuration setting of the printer which does not support this function, change the setting using the ValueJet Finder application which comes with the printer.
- If you change the network configuration while printing, you cannot complete printing.
- If unable to communicate with the printer after changing the network configuration, restart your printer. If the communication is still not successful, check the network configuration from MUTOH LFP Finder.
- The network configuration cannot be initialized.
   To change the network configuration, use the MUTOH LFP Finder application.

# 13.4.6.4. Roll Length Manage

Check and change the Roll Length Manage set in the printer.

	Ce Remote Panel		×
	Printer model : Printer Serial No. : Remote Panel Mode :	Remote Panel Mode	Update
	Status: Get printer Information: Success	Printer Info.	Exit
	Printer Status   Printer Control   Media Setting   Advanced Setting   Other Setting   Ditplay   Initialization   Lenguage : Japanese • Length : mm • Type :	▼ Stat	
	Alert Buzzer : On 💌		
	Update         Start           IP Addess         : 192.168.107.75         .         .         .           Subnet Mask         : 255.255.55.0         .         .         .         .           Gateway         : 192.168.107.254         .         .         .         .         .		
	Roll Length Manage		
1,2 <b>—</b> 3,4 <b>—</b>	RolLength : □II		

No.	Name	Description
1	Roll Length	Set the roll media length. Setting : < Off > / Roll1 / Roll2 / Roll3
2	Length *1	Set the roll media length. Setting : 1 m $\sim$ < 30 m > $\sim$ 1500 m XPJ-1341SR-P/1341WR-P Setting : 1 m $\sim$ < 30 m > $\sim$ 200 m
3	End Detection*2,3	Check and change the End Detection in the printer. Setting : Off / < On >
4	Print Stop *2	Specify whether to stop printing when the remaining roll media is 0[m]. Setting : < Off > / On

# NOTE

• \*1 After replacing the roll media, set the roll media length again.

If the roll media length is not set, the residual quantity of roll media may not be displayed correctly.

- \*2 The Print Stop menu is available when the Roll Length menu is set to either of Roll1, Roll2 or Roll3.
- \*3 This function is available for HA-1642

# 14. MUTOH Print Server

As a data pre-processing application, Mutoh Print Server (MPS) enhances the printing performance.

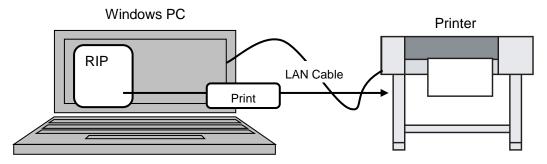
# 14.1. Notes for Use

### 14.1.1 Preparation

MPS runs as preprocessing software for MUTOH printers to help printer functions via Ethernet connection. By specifying PC's IP address from RIP, MPS receives a print data to optimize and send it to printer.

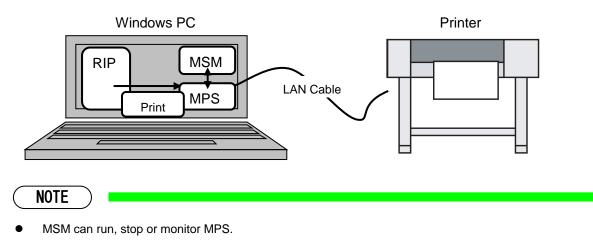
### Fig 1 Before Installing MPS

RIP sends a print data directly to printer .



### Fig 2 After Installing MPS

RIP sends a print data to MPS. MPS optimizes and sends it to printer.



### 14.1.2 Software RIP Setup

Specify your PC's IP address from RIP.

For the IP address settings, refer to the manual that comes with the RIP software.



 When the protocol such as "FTP" or "LP" is specified in the software RIP setting, the protocol change may be also required. Select "Raw" or "RawIP" for this case.
 For the process to specify the protocol to software RIP, refer to the setting process for each software RIP.

### 14.1.3 Windows Firewall Exception Setting

If you installed Windows Vista or later, MPS needs to be allowed through Windows Firewall. MPS is automatically added to the Windows Firewall exception list while installing MSM. If the printing is not available via MPS, check the Windows Firewall exceptions setting.



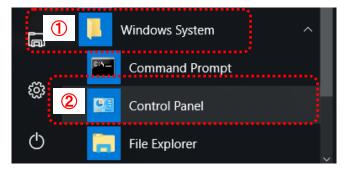
• If using virus security software other than Windows firewall, the exception setting may be required depending on the software. For further details, contact to the software manufacturer.

### (1)

Open the Control Panel from Windows Start menu.

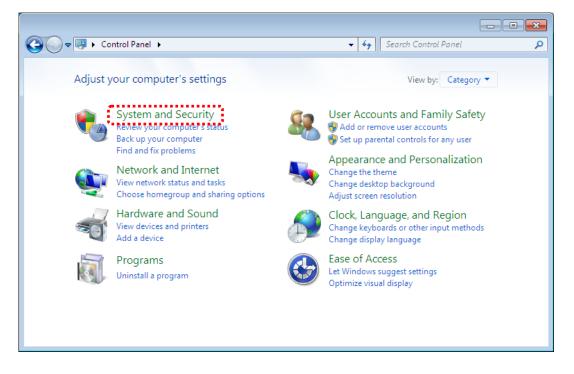
#### 「Windows10」

Go to Start menu. Scroll down and open Control Panel in Windows System.



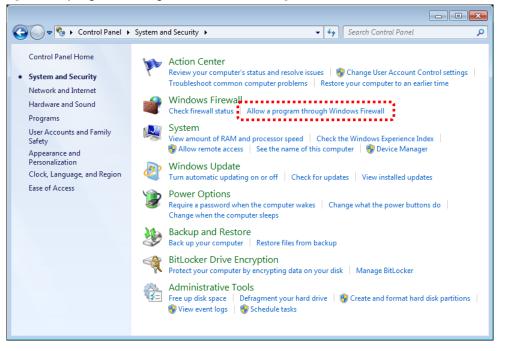
#### (2)

### Execute [System and Security].



### (3)

Click [Allow a program through Windows Firewall].



# (4)

Click [Change Settings].

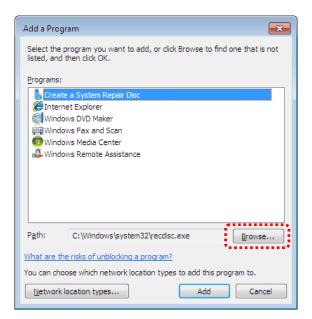
🖌 🕞 🗢 🕍 🔍 Windows Fi 🕨 Allowed Programs 🛛 👻 🍫	Search Control Panel	
Allow programs to communicate through Windows F	irewall	
To add, change, or remove allowed programs and ports, click Change		
	•	
What are the risks of allowing a program to communicate?	🛛 👦 Cha	nge settings
Allowed programs and features:		
Anowed programs and reactives.		
Name	Home/Work (Private)	Public 📩
BranchCache - Content Retrieval (Uses HTTP)		
BranchCache - Hosted Cache Client (Uses HTTPS)		
BranchCache - Hosted Cache Server (Uses HTTPS)		
BranchCache - Peer Discovery (Uses WSD)		
Connect to a Network Projector		
Core Networking	$\checkmark$	
Distributed Transaction Coordinator		
File and Printer Sharing		
HomeGroup		
iSCSI Service		
Media Center Extenders		
Netlogon Service		
	Details	Remove
	betaijsin	ne <u>m</u> ore
	Allow anothe	ar program
	Allow allocat	, programm
	OK	Cancel

# (4)

Click [Allow another program].

llow programs to communicate through Window add, change, or remove allowed programs and ports, click Ch		
hat are the risks of allowing a program to communicate?	😗 Cha	nge settings
Allowed programs and features:		
Name	Home/Work (Private)	Public 🔺
BranchCache - Content Retrieval (Uses HTTP)		
BranchCache - Hosted Cache Client (Uses HTTPS)		
BranchCache - Hosted Cache Server (Uses HTTPS)		
BranchCache - Peer Discovery (Uses WSD)		
Connect to a Network Projector		
Core Networking	$\checkmark$	
Distributed Transaction Coordinator		
File and Printer Sharing		
HomeGroup		
iSCSI Service		
Media Center Extenders		
Netlogon Service		
	Detai <u>l</u> s	Re <u>m</u> ove
		•••••
	<ul> <li>Allow anoth</li> </ul>	er p <u>r</u> ogram

(5) Click [Browse].



(6)

Select the installed folder.

If the folder with MUTOH Print Server installed has not changed, the installed folder is [C:¥Program Files (x86) ¥Mutoh¥MUTOH Status Monitor¥MPS] Select "VJEXTERNALSVC.exe" \*1 and click [Open].



• The location of this folder depends on your operating system.

Example) Windows 10 32bit :

[C:¥Program Files¥Mutoh¥MUTOH Status Monitor]

Example) Windows 10 64bit :

[C:¥Program Files (x86) ¥Mutoh¥MUTOH Status Monitor]

\*1 When using XPJ-1642WR, select VJEXTERNALSVC-2ndGen.exe. When using XPJ-1682SR-P, select VJEXTERNALSVC-3rdGen.exe.

# (7)

With selecting "VJEXTERNALSVC.exe", click [Add].

Add a Progr	am 💌		
	rogram you want to add, or click Browse to find one that is not hen click OK.		
Programs:			
UJEXTE	RNALSVC.exe		
P <u>a</u> th:	C: \Program Files\Mutoh\MUTOH Status Monit		
What are the	What are the risks of unblocking a program?		
You can choo	You can choose which network location types to add this program to.		
<u>N</u> etwork le	Network location types Add Cancel		

# (8) Click [OK].

<b>G -</b>	Windows Firewall  Allowed Programs	- + Search Control Panel
	Allow programs to communicate through Windows To add, change, or remove allowed programs and ports, click Chan What are the risks of allowing a program to communicate?	
	Allowed programs and features:	
	Name	Home/Work (Private) Public
	☑ VJEXTERNALSVC.exe	
	✓ VJEXTERNALSVC.exe     ✓/////////////////////////////////	
		-
		Details Remove
		Allow another program
		OK Cancel

# 14.1.4 Notes

- To install or run MPS, enable the Windows administrator account.
- Check that the printing is performed via Gigabit Ethernet connection from Windows Task Manager (excluding VJ-1638/VJ-1638W).

# 14.2. Hardware Requirements

### 14.2.1 Recommended Hardware Requirements

The recommended hardware requirements to operate MPS are shown in the table below.

ltem	Contents		
OS	Windows10 32bit(*2) / 64bit		
(*1)	Windows 8/8.1 32bit(*2) / 64bit		
	Windows 7 32bit(*2) / 64bit Service Pack 1		
CPU	Intel® Core™ i5 / i7 3GHz or larger		
Memory	4GByte or larger (*2)		
HDD	SSD (Solid State Drive)		
HDD	Network port to compliant with Gigabit Ethernet		
(Free Space)	(requires the printer with Gigabit Ethernet connectivity)		
LAN	Windows10 32bit(*2) / 64bit		
	Windows 8/8.1 32bit(*2) / 64bit		
	Windows 7 32bit(*2) / 64bit Service Pack 1		

- \*1 When the above OS support ends, the operation on MPS cannot be ensured.
- \*2 Please use a 64-bit OS and more than 8 GB of memory if multiple printers or 4head Printer are connected to your PC.

# NOTE

You can register the printer up to 5 units. The number of printer that can perform printing at the same time depends on your PC and software.

The read/write speed will slow down when you run RIP on HDD (Hard Disk Drive) and send a print job from RIP to more than one printer via MPS.

It is recommended to run RIP on SSD (Solid State Drive).

If you uninstall MSM when MPS is still enabled, the error appears in Windows event viewer. The error will not be displayed by installing the next version of MSM. If you no longer use MPS, please disable MPS on MSM.

# NOTE

For recommended operating environment, see the product specification of applicable MUTOH printer.

When PC does not meet the recommended hardware requirements, or depending on the resident software, you cannot achieve the full potential performance of MPS. In this case, try the following solutions:

- When using network HUB between the PC and printer: Connect the PC and printer directly without network.
- When using on-the-fly print from RIP: Change to RIP then Print.
- When using print data from USB hard disk or network drives:
   Copy print data to the hard disk built in PC before printing.
- When the printing is temporarily stopped while resident software runs or Windows Update is downloading:

Stop the program running in the background or change the settings to prevent its running during printing.

# 14.2.2 Example of Network Configuration to use MPS

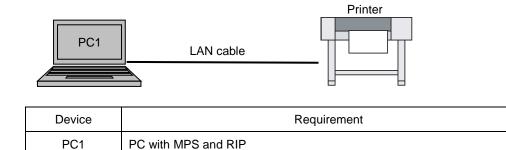
The application can be used in any one of the recommended environments below.

NOTE

The LAN cable to be connected to the printer should be more than category 5 (CAT5). If the Printer has Gigabit Ethernet, the network cable should be more than category 5e (CAT5e).

# 14.2.2.1. Example 1) Peer-to-peer connection

Connect the printer and MPS directly with LAN cable.



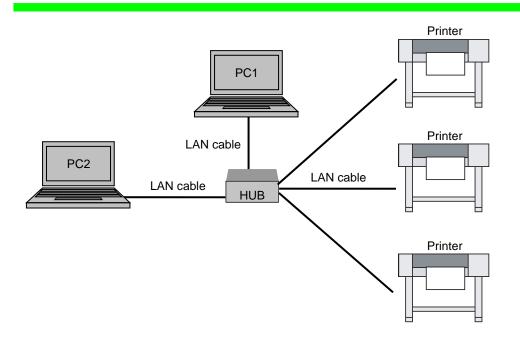
### 14.2.2.2. Example 2) HUB Connection

Connect the printer and MPS via HUB.

You can connect with several printers and start MPS for each printer.



If the printer has a Gigabit Ethernet port, use a Gigabit Ethernet HUB.



Device	Requirement	
PC1	PC with MPS	
PC2	PC with RIP for non-Windows platforms	

# 14.3. How to Use MPS

Please follow the procedure below to start MPS. After the setting is completed, the MPS main screen will appear and display the operation status.

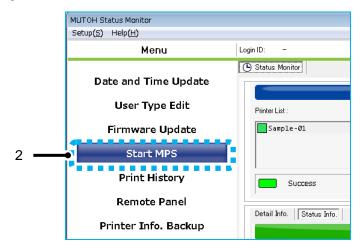
### 14.3.1 Enable MPS

Click [Enable MPS] checkbox when registering a printer.

Printer Registration				
		Print	ter Registration	
Printer List			Registration Information           Printer Model         _           Printer Name         Sample-01           Connection	
			Control right MUTOH Print Server(MPS)	
Menu	Add Setup	Delete	Menu Back Enter Cancel	

### 14.3.2 Start MPS

Click [Start MPS] from MSM main menu.



If MPS is disabled, the following message will appear. Click [Yes].



### 14.3.3 MPS Settings Confirmation Dialog

Click [OK] in the MPS Settings Confirmation dialog.



### 14.3.4 Select MPS Service Number

After the MPS settings confirmation, a window to select the MPS service number will be displayed.

The ValuJet printer information will be registered for each MPS service number.

Select the service number from 001 to 005, and click [Apply].

Sele	MPS Service Number
	Select MPS Service Number
	Please select MPS service number from 001 to 005.
	© D01
	○ 002
	○ 003
	004
E	○ 005
	VJEXTEVC_001 Printer Information
	Printer Name:
	Printer Model:
	Serial Number:
	IP Address:
	Port Number:
	4 Apply Close
L	

### 14.3.5 MPSSettings

After selecting the MPS service number, a window to configure each setting for MPS will be displayed. The specific "Port number" is required for each service number.

Click [Save] after setting is completed.

MPS Settings				×	
MPS Settings					
VJEXTSVC_001					
		Printer	Name: XPJ-1682SR		
Port Number: 9100		Printer	Model: XPJ-1682SR		
Spool Count: 30	▲ MB	Serial N			
		IP Ac	ddress: 060 8000 8000 4		
Mps Optimization	Startup Mo	de	Request from othe	er PC	
Enable	Auto :	Start			
Disable	⊖ Self S		O NO	1	
			0.110		
			F	ave Close	
			5 <u> </u>	Close	

### 14.3.6 MPS Main Screen

After setting is completed, the MPS main screen will appear and display the start-up status.

You can open each setting screen from the main screen.

55 MUTOHPrint Server Ver 0.0.1	-	- 🗆	×
XPJ-1682SR	0%	0.00м () ()	000
**************			

# 14.4. How to Configure MPS Settings

This chapter explains each setting for MPS.

# 14.4.1 MPS Service Number

Select the MPS service number to register the ValuJet printer information.

Sele	ect MPS Service Number				
	Select MPS Service Number				
	Please select MPS service number from 001 to 005.				
	XPJ-1682SR No.1     Running				
	O 002 XPJ-1682SR No.2 2 Running 3				
	003				
	004				
	005				
	VJEXTSVC_001 Printer Information				
	Printer Name: XPJ-1682SR No.1				
	Printer Model: XPJ-1682SR				
	Serial Number:				
	IP Address: #86 868 858 857				
	Port Number: 9100				
	Apply Close				

No.	Name	Description
1	MPS Service Number	Select the MPS service number to be registered in Windows service (resident program).
2	Printer Name	Displays the printer name set in the service number being used.
3	Running Status	Displays the running status of each service number being used.
4	Printer Information	Displays the printer information set in the service number being used.

### (1) Notes for selecting the service number

You cannot select the service number being used. Please select the number that the printer name is not displayed. If selecting the number being used, the following warning message will be displayed.

Sele	ct MPS Service Number	Х
	Select MPS Service Number	
	Please select MPS service number from 001 to 005.	
	● 001 VPS_UI ×	
	O 002     O 002       O 003     Image: This number is already used.   Please select another.	
	О 002	
	O 005	
	VJEXTSVC_001 Printer Information	
	Printer Name: XPJ-1682SRNo.1	
	Printer Model: XPJ-1682SR	
	Serial Number:	
	IP Address: IP Address Real Address Real	
	Port Number: 9100	
	Apply Close	

# 14.4.2 MPS Setting

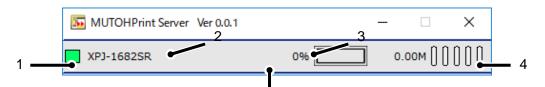
Configure the initial settings for each MPS service number.

VJEXTSVC_001	1PS Settings
Port Number: 100 Spool Count: 30 MB	Printer Name: XPJ-1682SR Printer Model: XPJ-1682SR Serial Number: IP Address:
Optimization     Startup M     Startup M     Optimization     Optimization	• • • • • _ • _
O Disable	

No.	Name	Description
1	1       Port Number       When port 9100 is used by another program, change the port number for MPS.         Change a RIP port number accordingly.       See the RIP manual for the procedures.	
2	Spool count	Set the spool size for MPS. The default value is set to an optimal value for each printer.
3	MPS Optimization	If the check box is checked, perform the data processing via MPS. If a data cannot be printed via MPS, uncheck the check box.
4	Starting Service	Set the auto-start service.
5	Access from other PC	Permit the RIP connection from other PC. If the check box is unchecked, printing from other PC will not be available.

### 14.4.3 Main Screen

The main screen will appear after MPS start. You can open the "MPS information" window from this screen.



No.	Name	5 Description
1	Operation Status	Displays the MPS status.
2	Printer Name	Displays the name of printer using MPS.
3	Job Processing Status	Displays the job processing status of MPS.
4	Spool Count	Displays the spool usage if MPS is in process.
5	MPS Information	Click and display the MPS information window.

#### (1) How to display the MPS information

If you mouse over the printer name on the main screen, the background color will change.

Click on the printer name to display the MPS information.

MUTOHPrint Server Ver 0.0.1       —       X         XPJ-1682SRNo.1       0%       0.00M       0.00I         XPJ-1682SRNo.2       0%       0.00M       0.00I       0.00I	Mouse over the printer name you want to check.
MUTOHPrint Server     Ver 0.0.1     —     X       XPJ-1682SR No.1     0%     0.00M     1       XPJ-1682SR NO.2     0%     0.00M     1	Click to display the MPS information when the color
	changes.

### 14.4.4 MPS Information

You can check each setting for MPS and start/stop the MPS operation on this screen.

MP	S Information		×	
	MPS Info	ormation		
	VJEXTSVC_001		MPS Settings	- 2
	Printer Name: XPJ-1682SR Printer Model: XPJ-1682SR IP Address: Operation Conditions		9100	
	Print Count: 0	Start	5 <sub>Stop</sub> 6	
	Print Progress: 0%     Spool Amount: 0.00 / 0.00 MB			
	Detailed Information			
			Close	

No.	Name	Description
1	MPS Registration Service Name	Displays the MPS service name registered in Windows service (resident program).
2	MPS Setting	Displays 14.4.2 "MPS Setting" window.
3	Printer Information	Displays the printer information set in the MPS service number.
4	Operation Status	Displays the operation status if MPS is in process.
5	Start	Start the MPS operation.
6	Stop	Stop the MPS operation.
7	Detail Information	Displays the detailed information (e.g. error status).

### 14.4.5 Restart MPS

If an error occurs or after changing the settings, you need to restart MPS.

To restart, click [Stop] button, and then click [Start] button.

Operation Conditions		
Print Count: 0		
Idle	Start	Stop
Print Progress: 0%		
Spool Amount: 0.00 / 0.00 MB		

#### (1) If an error occurs while using MPS

Restart MPS if an error occurs while MPS is in operation.

Operation Conditions	
Error	Start Stop

### (2) After changing the MPS settings

The MPS settings can be changed on the MPS Settings screen even after the setting is completed.

Restart MPS after changing the settings.

Spool Count:	30 🗭 MB	
Mps Optimization	Startup Mode	Request from other PC
Enable	Auto Start	⊚ок
○ Disable	○ Self Start	ОNO

# 14.5. Restrictions

This chapter describes the restrictions to use MPS and the differences from the direct printing.

# 14.5.1 When RIP and Spectrophotometer (SPECTROVUE) are used in combination

If you want to use Spectrophotometer (SPECTROVUE) with RIP, directly specify your printer's IP address from RIP. After performing the color measurement, specify the PC's IP address to print via MPS. See the RIP manual for the IP address settings.

To operate the spectrophotometer via MSM, the IP address change is not required.

# 14.6. Troubleshooting

This chapter describes common errors and solutions for MPS.

The troubleshooting below is based on that the printer warming-up has been completed.

#### 14.6.1 Troubles for Installation

- (1) Printing cannot be performed even after the setup is completed.
- 1: If you use the following printers, the F/W should be updated as below: VJ-2638, VJ-1638, VJ-1638W F/W Ver. 2.06 or later
- 2: Panel messages and solutions:

#### Case 1: Panel displays Ready to Print or Print Ready.

Solution: Check the IP address setting.

- MPS > Connection Settings tab

Specify the printer's IP address.

- 14.4.4 MPS Information
- Software RIP

Specify your PC's IP address with MSM.

See the RIP manual for the IP address setting.

- (If you specify the IP address according to the RIP manual, the PC's IP address for RIP
- might be specified instead of the PC's IP address for MSM.)

#### Case 2: Panel displays Ready to Print or Print Ready.

Solution: If the IP address setting is correct, check if MPS operates properly.

14.4.4 MPS Information

#### Case 3: Panel displays Receiving.

Solution: Check the Windows Firewall exceptions setting.

14.1.3 Windows Firewall Exception Setting

# NOTE

- The error in Case 3 might occur depending on the network restrictions or resident software. Check the operating manual of the installed software.
- The error in Case 3 might occur due to the protocol setting of software RIP.

14.1.2 Software RIP Setup

- (2) How to check which **Direct Print** or **Print via VPS** is performed:
- 1: Check from MSM.
  - 14.4.4 MPS Information
- 2: Check the printer status soon after the printing is performed.

If Print via VPS is selected, the printer displays Receiving and then performs initializations.

If **Direct Print** is selected, the printer displays **Printing** and performs initializations.

3: Check the netstat command from the command prompt.

#### Example)

Machine	Name	IP Address	Note
PC	PC123	192.168.1.100	PC with MSM and RIP
ValueJet	-	192.168.1.253	VJ-2638

(The numerical value is different every time.)

#### "MPS"

C:¥>nets	stat			
Active Co	onnections			
TCP TCP	Local Address PC123:1077 PC123:9100 PC123:1078	Foreign Address 192.168.1.100:9100 192.168.1.100:1077 192.168.1.253:9200	State ESTABLISHED ESTABLISHED ESTABLISHED	

#### "Direct Print"

C:¥>netstat			
Active Connections			
Proto Local Address TCP PC123:1076	Foreign Address 192.168.1.253	State ESTABLISHED	

#### 14.6.2 Troubles related to Printing

(1) Print result differs between 'via MPS' and 'without MPS'.

1: Check the restrictions may cause this issue.

3 14.5 Restrictions

(2) Printing cannot be performed suddenly.

1: Restart MPS.

3 14.4.4 MPS Information

2: If the panel does not display **Ready to Print** or **Print Ready**, restart the printer. See *Troubleshooting* in the printer's operation manual.

3: If the problem still persists after step.1 and 2, restart PC with MPS and RIP.

# 15. MiniMSM

The MSM window can be downsized by enabling MiniMSM. With this feature, some functions are limited.

## 15.1. How to start

Select "MiniMSM" from the MSM setting menu.

Printer registration(0)       Login (0: -         Initial setting(S)       Finiter Model:         Language(L)       Exit(Mage(1)         Login set,change(1)       Printer Information         Printer Monitor(M)       Printer List:         Close(C)       Printer History         Remote Panel       Printer Info.         Printer Info. Backup       Exit(MSM Minimize)         Exit(MSM Minimize)       Detail Mo.	XPJ-1682SR JE6U /
MiniMSM Laguage(L) Laguage(L) Laguage(L) Report Mail Setting(E) Printer Monitor(M) Close(C) Print History Remote Panel Printer Info. Backup Exit(MSM Minimize) Exit(MSM Minimize) Exit(MSM Minimize)	JE6U
Language(L) Login set,change(I) Report Mail Setting(E) Printer Monitor(M) Close(C) Print History Remote Panel Printer Info. Backup Exit(MSM Minimize) Exit(MSM Minimize) Printer Info. Backup	JE6U
Report Mail Setting(E)     Printer Monitor(M)       Close(C)     Print History       Remote Panel     Success       Printer Info. Backup     Status Info.       Exit(MSM Minimize)     Detail Info.	JE6U
Printer Monitor(M) Close(C) Print History Remote Panel Printer Info. Backup Exit(MSM Minimize) Detail Mo.  Status Info.  Head/Cartridge Info.   Detail Mo.  Status Info.   Detail Mo.  Status Info.   Detail Mo.  Status Info.   Detail Mo.  Status Info.   Detail Mo.   Detail Mo.	100.000.000.0
Close(C)     IP Agress:       Print History     Finnware Version M / C:       Remote Panel     Estitus Info.       Printer Info. Backup     Status Info.       Exit(MSM Minimize)     Date(YYYY-MP-DD-HH:MM)	100.000.000.0
Print History     Success     Control Right       Remote Panel     Detail Info.   Status Info.     Header Info.     Header Info.       Printer Info. Backup     Status Info.     Header Info.     Header Info.       Exit(MSM Minimize)     Date(YYYY-MF-DD-HH:1MY)     Contents	1186 / 11
Remote Panel     Success     Control Right       Printer Info. Backup     Detail Info.   Status Info     Heater Info.   S./C Info.   Head/Carridge Info       Exit(MSM Minimize)     Dete(YYYY-MF-0D-HH:1MY)   Contents	Info (
Remote Panel         Detail Mo.         Status Info.         Heater Info.         S/C Info.         Heater Info.	
Printer Info. Backup Exit(MSM Minimize) Detail Info.   Status Info Status Info Status Info Status Info Status Info Detail Contents	
Printer Info. Backup Status Information Exit(MSM Minimize) Date(YYYY-481-DD-181:191) Contents	
Exit(MSM Minimize) Date(YYYY-MH-DD-HH:MM) Contents	
2019-01-24 11:52 HEBDY TO PPINT	

No.	Name	Description
1	MiniMSM	Open the MiniMSM window.

## 15.2. Main Screen(For models other than XPJ-1462UF)

On the MiniMSM main screen, you can check the printer information and remotely control the printer.

Also, the window is resizable.

🙈 N

Sta

1-4 5

6

#### Maximum size

Mi	nim	um	size
		un	5120

Iminimum       Printer Name Sample         Success       Success         atus Info.       S/C Info.       Heater Info.       Remote Panel       Printer Information       MiniMSM S ( )         Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM)       Contents       2018-12-20 09:34       Ready to Print
Success         atus Info.       S/C Info.         Heater Info.       Remote Panel         Printer Information       MiniMSM S ( )         Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM)       Contents
atus Info. S/C Info. Heater Info. Remote Panel Printer Information MiniMSM S ( ) Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM) Contents
Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM) Contents
2018-12-20 09:34 Ready to Print

Info Check	Status:	$\mathbf{\nabla}$
	· •	

No.	Name	Description	
1	Information Check	Acquire the printer information.	
2	Status	Displays the printer status.	
		<ul> <li>Ready to print</li> <li>Error (Not ready to print)</li> </ul>	
		: Warning (Ready to print)	
3	Printer Select ▼	Select the printer to obtain the information if multiple printers are registered.	
4	Printer Name	Displays the printer name currently selected.	
5	Communication Status	Displays the communication status between the printer and PC.	
		: Communication Success	
		: Communication Error	
		Communicating	
6	Printer information	Displays the printer information.	

#### 15.2.1 Status Information

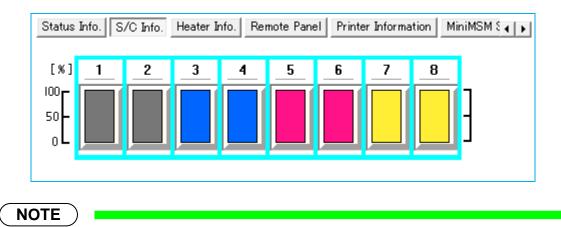
Displays the printer status.

	Status Info. S/C Info. Heater Info	o. Remote Panel Printer Information MiniMSM ξ ◀ ▶	
1 -	Date(YYYY-MM-DD-HH:MM)	Contents	- 2
	2018-12-20 09:36	Ready to Print	
3 -			
5 –			

No.	Name	Description
1	Date	Displays the date and time acquired the printer information. The date and time set on the printer will be displayed.
2	Contens	Displays the printer status.
3	Detail Information	Displays the solution if an error occurs.

#### 15.2.2 S/C Information

Displays the S/C remaining ink information in %.

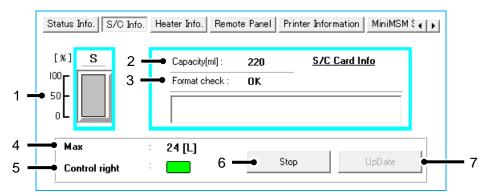


• For the details of S/C card recovery, see 7.7.2 S/C Card Recovery.

MSME-A-31

#### 15.2.3 Smart/C Information

Displays the Smart/C information.



No.	Name	Description
1	Format check	Displays the status of the read S/C card.
2	Capacity [ml] / [L]	Displays the capacity of the read S/C card in ml or L.
3	Detail Information	Displays the reason for the S/C card reading error.
4	Start-Stop	Check and cancel the reading of S/C card.
5	Max	Displays the maximum Smart/C of the printer that has been monitored. * The Smart/C MAX varies according to printer model.
6	Smart/C Amount	Displays in % the remaining amount of Smart/C for the printer that has been monitored.
7	Update	Click the "Update" button to update the Smart/C. Refer to "7.4.4.1 Smart/C Update" for details.

#### 15.2.4 Heater Information

Displays the heater information.

atus Info. S/C Info. Heater Info.	Remote Panel Printer Information MiniMSM § 4
Heater Setup temp	Print temp 💌 Wait T.O.
Pre: Pla: After:	Pre: Pla: After:
[C] 23 23 23	[C] Off Off Off
[F] 73 73 73	(F) Off Off Off
Heat complete : Printing :	[min] 60 60 60

#### 15.2.5 Remote Panel

Remotely control the printer.

	Stat	us Info. S/C Info. Heate	er Info. Remote Panel	Printer Information Min	iMSM 8 🖌 🕨
		C Remote Panel Mode	Enter Select	Print Head ALL	<b>•</b> • • 3
		C Short CL	O Nozzle Check	C Print Cancel	
2 -		O Normal CL	O Mode Print	🔿 Media Cut	
2		🔿 Long CL	🔿 Setup List	🔿 Sleep Mode	
		C Little Charge	C Palette		

No.	Name	Description		
1	Enter	Remotely perform the selected operation.		
2	List	Select the operation to be performed remotely.		
3	Select Print Head	Select the print head to be cleaned if the printer has more than one print head. Setting : <all> / Head 1 / Head 2</all>		

### NOTE

- The operation that you can perform remotely depends on printer model.
- The remote operation may not be available depending on the printer condition.

#### **15.2.6 Printer Information**

Displays the basic printer information.

Printer Model :	1.2 1000	
Printer Serial No. :	1.1 (120)	
IP Address :	500.50.50.50	
Firmware Version M / C :	/	

#### 15.2.7 MiniMSM Settings

Configure the settings for MiniMSM.

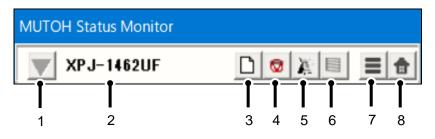
	S/C Info. Heater Info. Remote Panel Printer Information MiniMSM Settings	•
1 -	<ul> <li>Auto Printer Information</li> </ul>	ר
2	Interval : 60 ▼ [sec] ← 2	
3 -	Selected Printer	

No.	Name	Description
1	Auto Printer Information	Check this box to automatically get printer information. On : Enable Off : Disable *This function is not available when MSM is launched from the Windows printer driver.
2	Interval	When "Auto Printer Information" is ON, set a time interval to get the latest information from the printer. Value can be set from: <60[sec]> / 30[ sec] / 10[ sec] / 3[ sec]
3	Selected Printer	Check this box to monitor only one printer when multiple printers are registered.

## 15.3. XPJ-1462UF

In the case of XPJ-1462UF, it is possible to remotely control some processing with MiniMSM.

In addition, the MiniMSM screen is always displayed in front of the PC monitor.



No.	Name	Description	
1	Printer Select	Change the printer for which information is obtained when multiple printers are registered.	
2	Printer Name	Displays the currently displayed printer name.	
3	Media Set	Perform the media set.	
4	Print Cancel	Perform the print cancel.	
5	Cleaning	Perform the cleaning.	
6	Nozzle Check	Perform the nozzle check.	
7	Setting	Display the setting screen.	
8	Exit	Exit MiniMSM and display the MSM main screen.	

#### 15.3.1 Setting screen (Cleaning)

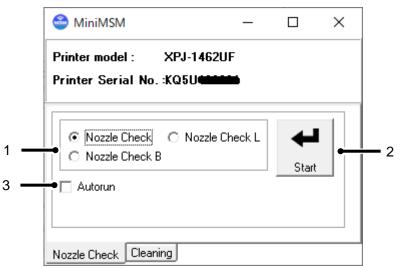
Set the cleaning type and execute cleaning.

	😂 MiniMSM	_		×	
1 2	•Printer model : •Printer Serial No	XPJ-1462UF . :KQ5U <b>411111</b>			
3	Short CL	C Long CL C Little Charge	<b>L</b> Start		4
5	<ul> <li>Autorun</li> <li>Select Print Head</li> </ul>	ALL			
	Nozzle Check Clea	nina			

No.	Name	Description	
1	Printer Model	Displays the currently displayed printer model.	
2	Printer Serial No.	Displays the currently displayed printer serial no.	
3	Cleaning Type	Select a cleaning type. Setting: Short / Normal / Long / Little Charge	
4	Start	Perform the cleaning.	
5	Autorun	When the setting is enabled, when the cleaning type on the MiniMSM screen is selected, cleaning is performed using the set cleaning type without displaying the setting screen.	
6	Select Print Head	Select the head to be cleaned.	

#### 15.3.2 Setting screen (Nozzle Check)

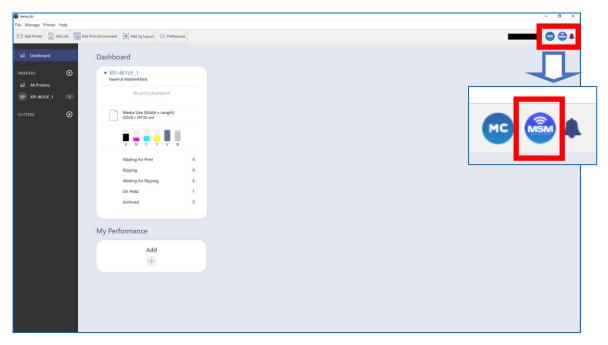
Set the type of nozzle check and execute the nozzle check.



No.	Name	Description
3	Nozzle Check Type	Select a nozzle check type. Setting : Nozzle Check / Nozzle Check B / Nozzle Check L
4	Start	Perform the nozzle check.
5	Autorun	When the setting is enabled, when the nozzle check type on the MiniMUM screen is selected, nozzle check is performed using the set nozzle check type without displaying the setting screen.

# 16. VerteLith

MSM icon on VerteLith allows user to start MSM installed in the computer.



[When MSM is launched from VerteLith]



[When MSM is la	aunched independe	ntly]
MUTOH Status Monitor Setup(S) Help(H)		
Menu	Login ID:	
Date and Time User Type I Firmware Up	Edit Printer	

The following restrictions apply when launching MSM from VerteLith.

#### [Restrictions]

1. MPS:

MPS in VerteLith will be launched (not MPS in MSM).

2. MSM configuration:

The MSM configuration settings including registered printer will take over from VerteLith. It differs from the settings used when MSM is started independently.

#### NOTE

• VerteLith will transfer the settings when MSM is launched. If user changes the language on VerteLith after MSM is launched, exit MSM once and restart it from VerteLith.

# **17.** List of Supported Functions for Each Machine Model

The table "Table 16 List of Supported Function for Each Machine Model" below shows the functions that the MSM supports for each printer model.

#### Table 17.1. List of Functions Supported by MSM for Each Machine Model

O:Supported △: Limited Supported -: Not Supported

	anta di Essa a Cara		Machine Model			
List of Supported Function		VJ-1324 VJ-1624 VJ-1638 VJ-2638	VJ-1638X VJ-1938X	VJ-1638W VJ-1624W VJ-1924W	VJ-1638WX VJ-1938WX VJ-1938WX-K4	
Date and	Date and Time Update		0	0	0	
Media Type Ed	it / User Type Edit	0	0	0	0	
Firmwa	re Update	0	0	0	0	
Check cur	rent firmware	0	0	0	0	
e-mail N	Notification	0	0	0	0	
Color	Verify *4	∆*1	∆*1	_	_	
	Printer Information	0	0	0	0	
	Details Information	0	0	0	0	
	Smart/C Information	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	
Chatura manitan	Head / Cartridge Information	0	0	0	0	
Status monitor	Heater Information	0	_	_	_	
	S/C Card / Ink Information	0	0	0	0	
	Media Information	_	_	_	-	
	Print Information	_	_	_	_	
MPS	S Start	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	
VSM M	1obileÅ *2	0	0	0	0	
Print	History	_	0	_	0	
Remo	te Panel	_	0	_	0	
Printer Infor	mation Backup	0	0	0	0	
Printer Infor	mation Upload	0	0	0	0	

\*1:Firmware Version : 1.09 or later version(VJ-1638 :2.01 , VJ-2638 :2.04 or later version)

\*2:Application "VSM Mobile" for Handheld terminal is required. \*3:Firmware Version : 2.06 or later version(VJ-1638 / VJ-1638W / VJ-2638)

Refer to the VPS Operation Manual for details of VPS (ValueJet Print Server).

You can download the VPS Operation Manual from Mutoh Club.

\*4 The printer model, which was launched after the EOL of VM-10, does not support this function.

 $\circ$ :Supported  $\triangle$ : Limited Supported -: Not Supported

List of Supported Function		Machine Model			
	VJ-1628TD VJ-2628TD	VJ-1608HS VJ-1617H	RJ-900X RJ-901X	VJ-628 VJ-628X VJ-628MP	
Date and	Time Update	0	0	O *5	0
Media Type Ed	lit / User Type Edit	0	0	_	0
Firmwa	are Update	0	0	O *5	0
Check cur	rrent firmware	0	0	O *5	0
e-mail l	Notification	O *1	O *2	O *5	0
Color	Verify *7	-	∆ *3	_	-
	Printer Information	0	0	0	0
	Details Information	0	0	0	0
	Smart/C Information	Δ	Δ	_	Δ
Status monitor	Head / Cartridge Information	0	0	0	0
Status monitor	Heater Information	0	0	0	0
	S/C Card / Ink Information	0	0	0	0
	Media Information	-	_	_	_
	Print Information	-	_	_	_
MP	S Start	-	_	_	_
VSM	Mobile *4	0	0	O *5	0
Print	Print History		0	O *5	0
Remo	Remote Panel		_	_	0
Printer Infor	mation Backup	0	0	0	0
Printer Infor	mation Upload	0	0	0	0

#### Table 17.2. List of Functions Supported by MSM for Each Machine Model

\*1:Firmware Version : 1.08 or later version

\*2:Firmware Version : 1.06 or later version(VJ-1608HS)

\*3:Firmware Version : 2.00 or later version(VJ-1608HS) \*4:Application "VSM Mobile" for Handheld terminal is required.

\*5:Support only LAN connection

\*6:Support only USB connection \*7 The printer model, which was launched after the EOL of VM-10, does not support this function

		o:Supported		ported —: Not S
	List of Supported Function		Machine Mod	lel
List of Supported Function		VJ-426UF VJ-626UF	VJ-1626UH	VJ-1628X
Date ar	nd Time Update	0	0	0
Media Type	Edit / User Type Edit	0	0	0
Firm	ware Update	0	0	0
Check of	current firmware	0	0	0
e-ma	il Notification	0	0	0
Col	or Verify *2	-	_	Δ
	Printer Information	0	0	0
	Details Information	0	0	0
	Smart/C Information	Δ	Δ	Δ
	Head / Cartridge Information	0	0	0
Status monitor	Heater Information	-	_	0
	S/C Card / Ink Information	0	0	0
	Media Information	-	_	_
	Print Information	-	_	_
Ν	IPS Start	_	_	0
VSM Mobile *1		0	0	0
Pr	Print History		0	0
Rei	mote Panel	0	_	0
Printer Int	formation Backup	0	0	0
Printer In	formation Upload	0	0	0

#### Table 17.3. List of Functions Supported by MSM for Each Machine Model

o:Supported △: Limited Supported -: Not Supported

\*1: Application "VSM Mobile" for Handheld terminal is required.

\*2 The printer model, which was launched after the EOL of VM-10, does not support this function.

		∘:Suppo	rted ∆: Limited	d Supported -:	Not Supported
List of Suppo	rtad Eurotian	Machine Model			
List of Supported Function		VJ-1324X VJ-1324XS VJ-1624X	VJ-1624WX VJ-1924WX	VJ-2638X	VJ-1638UH VJ-1638UR
Date and Ti	me Update	0	0	0	0
Media Type Edit	/ User Type Edit	0	0	0	0
Firmware	e Update	0	0	0	0
Check curre	ent firmware	0	0	0	0
e-mail No	otification	0	0	0	0
Color V	erify *2	Δ	_	Δ	_
	Printer Information	0	0	0	0
	Details Information	0	0	0	0
	Smart/C Information	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ
Status monitor	Head / Cartridge Information	0	0	0	0
	Heater Information	0	_	0	_
	S/C Card / Ink Information	0	0	0	0
	Media Information	_	_	_	_
	Print Information	_	_	_	_
MPS	Start	_	_	0	0
VSM Mobile *1		0	0	0	0
Print H	listory	0	0	0	0
Remote	Panel	0	0	0	0
Printer Inform	ation Backup	0	0	0	0
Printer Inform	ation Upload	0	0	0	0

#### Table 17.4. List of Functions Supported by MSM for Each Machine Model

\*1: Application "VSM Mobile" for Handheld terminal is required. \*2 The printer model, which was launched after the EOL of VM-10, does not support this function.

		o:Supported	∆: Limited Support	rted -: Not Support
List of Su	poorted Euroption		Machine Mode	
List of Supported Function		VJ-1938TX	VJ-1948WX	VJ-1627MH
Date ar	d Time Update	0	0	0
Media Type I	Edit / User Type Edit	0	0	0
Firm	ware Update	0	0	0
Check o	urrent firmware	0	0	0
e-ma	il Notification	0	0	0
Co	blor Verify	_	-	_
	Printer Information	0	0	0
	Details Information	0	0	0
	Smart/C Information	Δ	Δ	Δ
	Head / Cartridge Information	0	0	0
Status monitor	Heater Information	_	0	0
	S/C Card / Ink Information	0	0	0
	Media Information	_	-	-
	Print Information	_	-	-
N	IPS Start	0	0	-
VSI	/ Mobile *1	0	0	0
Print History		0	0	0
Rer	note Panel	0	0	0
Printer Inf	ormation Backup	0	0	0
Printer In	ormation Upload	0	0	0

#### Table 17.5. List of Functions Supported by MSM for Each Machine Model

\*1: Application "VSM Mobile" for Handheld terminal is required.

		o:Supported		ed —: Not Supp
		Machine Model		
List of Supported Function		XPJ-1641SR XPJ-1641SR-P	XPJ-1682SR XPJ-1682SR-P	XPJ-1682WR
Date a	nd Time Update	0	0	0
Media Type	Edit / User Type Edit	0	0	0
Firm	nware Update	0	0	0
Check	current firmware	0	0	0
e-ma	ail Notification	0	0	0
	Printer Information	0	0	0
	Details Information	0	0	0
	Smart/C Information	Δ	Δ	Δ
Status monitor	Head / Cartridge Information	0	0	0
	Heater Information	0	0	—
	S/C Card / Ink Information	0	0	0
	MPS Start	_	0	0
Print History		0	0	0
Remote Panel		0	0	0
Printer Ir	formation Backup	0	0	0
Printer Ir	nformation Upload	0	0	0

#### Table 17.6. List of Functions Supported by MSM for Each Machine Model

		○:Supported ∆: Limited	Supported -: Not Sup
List of Supr	List of Supported Function		e Model
List of Supp		XPJ-461UF	XPJ-661UF
Date and	Time Update	0	0
Media Type Ec	dit / User Type Edit	0	0
Firmwa	are Update	0	0
Check cu	rrent firmware	0	0
e-mail	Notification	0	0
	Printer Information	0	0
	Details Information	0	0
	Smart/C Information	Δ	Δ
Status monitor	Head / Cartridge Information	0	0
	Heater Information	_	-
	S/C Card / Ink Information	0	0
MP	S Start	-	-
Print History		0	0
Remote Panel		0	0
Printer Information Backup		0	0
Printer Info	rmation Upload	0	0

#### Table 17.7. List of Functions Supported by MSM for Each Machine Model

#### Table 17.8. List of Functions Supported by MSM for Each Machine Model

 $\circ$ :Supported  $\triangle$ : Limited Supported -: Not Supported

	List of Supported Function		e Model
		VJ-1638UH2 VJ-1638UR2	XPJ-1682UR
Date and	Date and Time Update		0
Media Type Ed	it / User Type Edit	0	0
Firmwa	re Update	0	0
Check cur	rent firmware	0	0
e-mail N	Notification	0	0
Colo	r Verify	-	-
	Printer Information	0	0
	Details Information	0	0
	Smart/C Information	Δ	Δ
Status monitor	Head / Cartridge Information	0	0
Status monitor	Heater Information	-	_
	S/C Card / Ink Information	0	0
	Media Information	-	_
	Print Information	_	-
MP	S Start	0	0
VSM	VSM Mobile		-
Print	Print History		0
Remo	te Panel	0	0
Printer Infor	mation Backup	0	0
Printer Infor	mation Upload	0	0

List of Supported Function			Machine Model	
			VJ-1628MH	XJ-1341SR-P
Date and	Time Update	0	0	0
Media Type E	dit / User Type Edit	0	0	0
Firmwa	are Update	0	0	0
Check cu	rrent firmware	0	0	0
e-mail	Notification	0	0	0
	Printer Information	0	0	0
	Details Information	0	0	0
Status monitor	Smart/C Information	Δ	Δ	Δ
Status monitor	Head / Cartridge Information	0	0	0
	Heater Information	∆*1	0	0
	S/C Card / Ink Information	0	0	0
	MPS	0	-	-
Prin	Print History		0	0
Rem	Remote Panel		0	0
Printer Info	Printer Information Backup		0	0
Printer Info	rmation Upload	0	0	0

Table 17.9. List of Functions Supported by MSM for Each Machine Model

 $\circ$ :Supported  $\triangle$ : Limited Supported -: Not Supported

NOTE

\*1 This function may not be available for some countries.

			nited Supported	-: Not Supported	
List of Su	anastad Eurotian	Machine Model			
List of Supported Function		XPJ-1341WR-P	XPJ-1462UF	HA-1642	
Date an	d Time Update	0	0	0	
Media Type B	Edit / User Type Edit	0	0	0	
Firmv	vare Update	0	0	0	
Check c	urrent firmware	0	0	0	
e-mai	e-mail Notification		0	0	
	Printer Information	0	0	0	
	Details Information	0	0	0	
Status monitor	Smart/C Information	Δ	Δ	Δ	
Status mornior	Head / Cartridge Information	0	0	0	
	Heater Information	-	-	0	
	S/C Card / Ink Information	0	0	0	
	MPS		-	-	
Pri	Print History		0	0	
Rer	Remote Panel		0	0	
Printer Information Backup		0	0	0	

0

0

#### Table 17.10. List of Functions Supported by MSM for Each Machine Model

Printer Information Upload

o:Supported △: Limited Supported -: Not Supported

0

#### Table 17.11. List of Functions Supported by MSM for Each Machine Model

 $\circ$ :Supported  $\triangle$ : Limited Supported -: Not Supported

	and a di Franca di Ang	Machine Model
List of Suppo	XPJ-C641SR-P	
Date and T	ime Update	0
Media Type Edi	t / User Type Edit	0
Firmwar	e Update	0
Check curr	ent firmware	0
e-mail N	otification	0
	Printer Information	0
	Details Information	0
Status monitor	Smart/C Information	Δ
Status monitor	Head / Cartridge Information	0
	Heater Information	0
	S/C Card / Ink Information	0
М	PS	-
Print History		0
Remote Panel		0
Printer Information Backup		0
Printer Inforr	nation Upload	0

# **18. Error Code List**

## 18.1. Printer Status

Status	No.	Description
Communication Err.	1	The communication with printer is not available.
		Please check the followings.
		1. Make sure that the network cable is connected.
		2. Make sure that the printer is on.
		3. Make sure that the printer's IP address is correct.
	2	The communication with printer is duplicated.
		Please check the communication again.
	3	The acquisition of printer information failed.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
	4	The printer's serial number is not registered yet.
		Please contact the dealer.
	5	The acquisition of printer information failed. Click 'Start' button.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
Printer Info Update Err.	1 - 4	The acquisition of printer information failed. Please perform the followings.
		1. Restart the printer.
		2. Restart the MSM.
		If the problem still exists even you performed the items above, please
		contact the dealer.
	5	The temporary file for the printer information cannot be deleted.
		Please perform the followings.
		1. Restart the Printer.
		2. Restart the MSM.
		3. Check the Tmp folder, and delete the file if exists.
		If the problem still exists even you performed the items above, please
		contact the dealer.
PrinterInfo acquisition	1 - 8,	Could not acquire the printer information.
Err.	10-12.14	Press 'Start' button to acquire the printer information again.
	9	The acquisition of printer information conflicted.
		Press 'Start' button to acquire the printer information again.
	13	The acquisition of printer information conflicted.
		Obtain the printer information again.

Status	No.	Description
PrinterInfo acquisition	1 - 8,	Could not acquire the printer information.
Err.	10-12.14	Press 'Start' button to acquire the printer information again.
	9	The acquisition of printer information conflicted.
		Press 'Start' button to acquire the printer information again.
	13	The acquisition of printer information conflicted.
		Obtain the printer information again.
	15 - 40	Printer Information Backup Failed. Could not obtain the printer information.
		Go to Printer Information Backup and try again.
Smart/C Update Err.	1 - 3	Could not update the Smart/C.
		Press 'Update' button to update the Smart/C.
	4	The update of Smart/C has been completed normally,
		but the initialization of Smart/C update log file failed.
		Please contact the dealer.
	5	Could not acquire the Smart/C from the server.
		Click 'Update' button to update the Smart/C again.
	6 - 8	Could not update the Smart/C.
		Check the type of Smart/C.
	9 - 10	Could not update the Smart/C.
		Cannot update the used Smart/C.
	11	Could not update the Smart/C.
		The limit of Smart/C update reached the maximum.
	12	Could not update the Smart/C.
		The Smart/C update is excessive in amount.
		Please update the Smart/C within the specified limit.
	13	Could not update the Smart/C.
		Press 'Update' button to update the Smart/C.
Cannot update until after	-	Cannot update the Smart/C without login.
login.		Please login to update the Smart/C.

Status	No.	Description
Printer Err.	1	The printer cannot be identified. Please check the followings.
-		1. Make sure that the serial number has been set correctly.
	2	The printer cannot be identified. Please check the followings.
		1. Make sure that the printer has been registered.
	3	The acquisition of printer information failed.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
	4	The printer's serial number is not registered yet.
		Please contact the dealer.
	5	The acquisition of printer information failed. Click 'Start' button.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
	6	The printer cannot be identified. Please check the followings.
		1. Make sure that the activation mode is correct (PR).
	7 - 8	The printer cannot be identified. Please check the followings.
		1. Make sure that the printer model supports the MSM.
Printer Err. : Serious Failure	xxx	The system error occurred. Make sure
		1. the printer runs properly.
		For details, please see the operation manual of the printer.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
	71 , 73	The system error occurred. Make sure
		1. the media is properly loaded to the printer.
		If the error still persists, the printer may have been damaged. Please contact
		your dealer.
	72 , 74	The system error occurred. Make sure
		1. the media is properly loaded to the printer.
		2. there is no obstacle on the platen.
		If the error still persists, the printer may have been damaged. Please contact
		your dealer.
	76	The system error occurred. Make sure
		1. the Voltage Selector Switch is set to the correct voltage for your region.
		If the error still persists, the printer may have been damaged. Please contact
		your dealer.
Printer Err. : AC Shut Down	-	Restart the Printer.
Printer Err. : CPU Error		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.

Status	No.	Description
F/W Installation Mode	-	Restart the Printer.
MSM Err.	1	Unspecified Error.
		If the MSM is the old version, install the latest version.
	2	No printer has been registered.
		Please register the printer.
	3	There is no file required for the operation.
		Please re-install the MSM.
Activation required.	-	The activation has not been executed.
		The printing cannot be performed without the activation.
	-	Since you don't have the control right, the activation cannot be executed.
		Acquire the control right, or execute the activation by the MSM that has the
		control right. The printing cannot be performed without the activation. Please
		execute the activation.
Activation Code get error	-	Could not acquire the activation code.
		Execute the activation again.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
Activation Err.	1	Could not acquire the activation information, so the registration is not
		available. Perform the registration again.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
	2	The activation failed. The printer registration and the printing are not
		available without the activation. Execute the activation again.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
	3	Could not acquire the activation information, so the registration is not
		available. Perform the registration again.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
	4	Could not acquire the activation code.
		Restart the printer, Execute the activation again.
	5 - 7	Could not execute the activation.
		Execute the activation again.
	8	Could not execute the activation. The activation code is incorrect.
		Make sure that the activation code is appropriate for the target printer.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.

Status	No.	Description
Login error	-	Could not login to the server. Please check the followings.
		1. Make sure that the Internet access is available.
		2. Make sure that the ID and password are correct.
WebServer Err.	-1	The MSM version may be old.
	-100	Please use the latest MSM.
	-200	Could not login to the server.
	-220	Please check the ID and password.
	-300	The issuance of Smart/C or Activation Code failed.
		Please update again.
	-310	The server is in the maintenance status.
		Please try again later.
	-320	Cannot update the Smart/C due to the lack of Smart/C.
		Please contact the dealer.
	-330	Could not acquire the Smart/C or activation code from the server.
		Please contact the dealer.
	-360	There is no Smart/C available.
		Please contact the dealer.
	-380	exceeds the upper limit to use the Smart/C
	-400	Cannot connect to the server. Please check the following
		1. Connection Setting
		2. Internet Connection Setting
	-500	Cannot connect to the server
		Please contact the dealer.

Status	No.	Description
Communication Err.	1	The communication with printer is not available. Please check the
		followings.
		1. Make sure that the network cable is connected.
		2. Make sure that the printer is on.
		3. Make sure that the printer's IP address is correct.
	2	The acquisition of printer information conflicted.
		Please try again later.
	3	The acquisition of printer information failed.
		If the same error is repeatedly displayed,, please contact the dealer.
	4	The printer's serial number is not registered yet.
		Please contact the dealer.
	5	The acquisition of printer information failed.
		If the same error is repeatedly displayed, please contact the dealer.
Printer Info Update Err.	1 - 8	Could not acquire the printer information.
	10 - 12	The printer information again.
	9	The acquisition of printer information conflicted.
		Please try again later.
Control right Err.	1	Could not update the control right due to the update of Smart/C.
		After the update of Smart/C is completed, update the control right.
	2 - 3,	Could not update the control right.
	5	Please try again later.
	4	The control right is duplicated.
		Could not acquire the control right, since other MSM acquires the control
		right.

# 18.2. Printer Registration

Status	No.	Description
Printer Change Err.	1 - 2	This printer is different from the registered printer, so the registered content
		for the printer cannot be changed.
		Please register the printer as another printer.
	3	Unable to change. Please register this printer.
Printer Registration Err.	1 - 2	The target printer is already registered, so the registration is not available.
	3 - 4	The activation succeeded, but the acquisition of printer information failed, so
	6 - 8	the printer was not registered to the server and MSM.
	5	The initialization of printer information file failed.
		There is no problem with the activation and the printer registration.
	9	The MSM is previous version. Please use the latest version.
Printer Err.	1	The printer cannot be identified. Please check the followings.
		1. Make sure that the serial number has been set correctly.
	2 - 4	The printer cannot be identified. Please check the followings.
		1. Make sure that the printer has been registered.
	5	The printer cannot be identified. Please check the followings.
		1. Make sure that the activation mode is correct (BM).
	6	The printer cannot be identified. Please check the followings.
		1. Make sure that the activation mode is correct (PR).
	7 - 8	The printer cannot be identified. Please check the followings.
		1. Make sure that the printer model supports the MSM

Status	No.	Description
Activation required.	-	The activation has not been executed.
		The printing cannot be performed without the activation.
		Please execute the activation.
		Since you don't have the control right, the activation cannot be executed.
		Acquire the control right, or execute the activation by the MSM that has the
		control right.
		The printing cannot be performed without the activation.
		Please execute the activation.
Activation Code get error	-	Could not acquire the activation code.
		Execute the activation again.
		If the same error is repeatedly displayed, please contact the dealer.
Activation Err.	1,3	Could not acquire the activation information, so the registration is not
		available. Perform the registration again.
		If the same error is repeatedly displayed, please contact the dealer.
	2	The activation failed.
		The printer registration and the printing are not available without the
		activation. Execute the activation again.
		If the same error is repeatedly displayed, please contact the dealer.
	4	Could not execute the activation.
		Restart the printer, Execute the activation again.
	5 - 7	Could not execute the activation.
		Execute the activation again.
	8	Could not execute the activation.
		The activation code is incorrect.
		Make sure that the activation code is appropriate for the target printer.
		If the same error is repeatedly displayed, please contact the dealer.

Status	No.	Description
WebServer Err.	-1	If the MSM is the old version, install the latest version.
	-100	
	-200	Could not login to the server.
	-220	Please check the ID and password.
	-300	Could not acquire the activation code.
		Execute the activation again.
	-310	The server is in the maintenance status.
		Please try again later.
	-320	Could not acquire the activation code.
		Execute the activation again.
	-400	Cannot connect to the server. Please check the following.
		1. Connection Setting
		2. Internet Connection Setting
	-500	Cannot connect to the server.
		Please contact the dealer.
MSM Err.	1	Unspecified Error.
		If the MSM is the old version, install the latest version.
	2	No printer has been registered.
		Please register the printer.
	3	There is no file required for the operation.
		Please re-install the MSM.

## 18.3. Remote Panel

No.	Description
-1	A communication error occurred between PC and the printer.
	Check the connection between the PC and the printer, and then click 'Update' again.
-2	The old version of MSM or firmware might be installed.
	Update MSM and firmware to the latest versions.
-3	The old version of MSM or firmware might be installed.
-4	Update MSM and firmware to the latest versions.
-10	Unable to switch to remote panel mode. Currently, the printer is operated from the printer
	operation panel.
	Please wait until the panel operation is complete.
-11	Another MSM Mobile is in operation.
	Please wait until another user finishes operating the printer.
-12	Remote Panel Mode is not activated.
	Acquire the control right.
-13	Timeout error.
	Please try again later.
-20	Data printing.
	Please wait until the printer completes the printing.
-21	The printer cannot execute the instructions from the remote panel.
	Please check the printer status.
-22	The printer is in sleep mode.
	Wake the printer from sleep mode and try again.
-23	The printer is executing the instruction from the remote panel.
	Please check the printer status.
-24	Unable to execute the instruction from the remote panel while the printer is not printing.
	Please check the printer status.
-100	Unsupported Function.
	Update MSM and the firmware to the latest versions.
-401	A communication error occurred between PC and the printer.
	Restart MSM and the printer.

## 18.4. Smart/C 18.4.1 S/C Card

Status	No.	Description
Read Error	-	Cannot read the S/C card.
		Insert and remove the S/C card.
No S/C card exists.	-	The S/C card is not inserted.
		Insert the S/C card.
No card reader exists.	-	The S/C card reader is not connected.
		Connect the S/C card reader.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
Card Reader Duplication	-	Multiple S/C card reader are connected.
		Make sure to connect only one S/C card reader.
Invalid S/C card	1,	This S/C card is already used.
	3 - 6	Insert a new S/C card.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
	2,	This S/C card does not support the printer.
	7 - 10	Insert the S/C card that supports the printer.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.

Status	No.	Description
Smart/C Update Err	1 – 5	A communication error occurred between PC and the printer.
		Update the Smart/C again.
	6 - 8,19	This S/C card does not support the printer.
		Insert the S/C card that supports the printer.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
	9 - 10	This S/C card is already used.
		Insert a new S/C card.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.
	12	That will exceed the maximum Smart/C capacity.
		Replace with the S/C card that has sufficient free space to charge the
		credits you specified.
	13	Unspecified Error.
		If the MSM is the old version, install the latest version.
	14	The S/C card was removed while updating.
		Insert the S/C card that supports the printer.
	15	This S/C card does not support the printer.
		Insert the S/C card that supports the printer.
	16	The S/C card was replaced while updating.
		Do not replace the card while updating.
	17 - 18	Check that the latest device driver for the S/C card reader is installed.
		If the same error still persists, please contact the dealer.

# **19. Error messages and solutions**

This section describes error messages and solutions to the messages. When an error occurs, an error

message will appear on MSM. The machine may stop operation depending on the error.

However, please note that there are some errors that are not listed.

Dispaly	Description
Cover Open	The front cover is open. Close it.
Lever Up	The media fixing handle or Lever is unlocked. Lock the handle or Lever.
Ink End No.*******	The ink is out. (The machine will stop operation) Replace with a new ink cartridge.
S/C Card Error No.*******	Unable to recognize the smartchip card. Insert the smartchip card correctly.
No Cartridge No.*******	Ink cartridge is not loaded. (The machine will stop operation) Insert the ink cartridge.
Full WasteInkTank	The waste ink tank is full. (The machine will stop operation) Immediately drain the waste fluids into a container. Once emptying the tank, reset the waste ink counter to zero in MSM depending on the Printer model.
Cartridge size nsupport. No.*******	Unsupported cartridge is installed. Use a supported cartridge for this product.
Check that the ink cartridge is correctly installed. No.*******	<ul> <li>When using ink cartridges</li> <li>Unable to recognize the ink cartridge correctly.</li> <li>Insert the ink cartridge again. If this error persists, contact your local MUTOH dealer.</li> <li>When using high-capacity ink pack adapters</li> <li>You have replaced with a new smartchip card, but probably forgot to replace the ink bag. Replace both smartchip card and ink bag in a set.</li> </ul>
Check that correct color is correctly installed. No.*******	Ink cartridge is inserted into a wrong slot. Insert it into the correct slot.
S/C card Recognition Error No.*******	<ul> <li>The smartchip card that needs smartchip recovery may have been installed.</li> <li>Check that the ink color of the smartchip card inserted is correct.</li> <li>In case of wrong color insertion, insert a correct smartchip card.</li> <li>If color is correct, press [Enter] key. The printer will perform smartchip recovery and will continue to print.</li> </ul>
Pinch roller position check(Right):Media Edge	The pinch roller on the right hand side (origin side) is not positioned correctly. Position it on the edge of the media.
Pinch roller position check(Right):Grit roller rojection	The pinch roller on the right hand side (origin side) is not positioned correctly. Position it on the edge of the media.

Dispaly	Description
Pinch roller position check(Left):Media Edge	The pinch roller on the left hand side (non-origin side) is not positioned correctly. Position it on the edge of the media.
Pinch roller position check(Left):Grit roller projection	The pinch roller on the left hand side (non-origin side) is not ositioned correctly. Position it over the protruding part of the grit roller.
Media Recognition Error	Failed to detect media. (The machine will stop operation) Reload media.
Media Slant Error	Media is skewed. (The machine will stop operation) Reload media.
Roll Media End	The machine has run out of media. (The machine will stop operation) Load a new roll media.
Roll Media End(Print Stop)	The machine has run out of media. (The machine will stop operation) Load a new roll media.
Crop mark read error(Media set error)	The machine may not be able to read the cropmarks if they are not positioned correctly. Set media so that the bottom edges of the two cropmarks on the front side are horizontal on the cutting mat.
Crop mark read error(Media Skew Error)	The machine may not be able to read the cropmarks properly if marks are skewed more than five degrees. Set media correctly.
Crop mark read error(Mark * read error)	Check if the marks failed to read are not dirty or faint. The mark number (*) corresponds to the detection order of cropmarks.
No Media	Ready to print. (No media is loaded)
Discharged	The machine is not filled with ink. Perform initial ink charging to fill ink in the machine.
Life Times[CR Motor]	CR motor is nearing the end of life. (The machine will continue operation) Please contact your local MUTOH dealer or MUTOH customer service.
Life Times[PF Motor]	PF motor is nearing the end of life. (The machine will continue operation) Please contact your local MUTOH dealer or MUTOH customer service.
Life Times[Pump]	Pump motor is nearing the end of life. (The machine will continue operation) Please contact your local MUTOH dealer or MUTOH customer service.
Change Plg.	High-capacity ink pack adapter has been used for a certain number of times. Replace with a new plug.
Contour cutting is not possible because the take-up device is in operation.	When doing contour cutting, remove media from the takeup unit and set the Output Mode to other than "Take up".
Unlock the media fixing handle and then remove media	Unlock the media fixing handle. If media is loaded in themachine, remove the media. Keep the handle unlocked when you are not using the machine.

# ΜυτοΗ